



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Colossians

Version 27

Copyrights & Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 27

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 10

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 10

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 12

Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 14

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament

Date: 2020-02-20

Version: 0.12

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible

Date: 2020-02-20

Version: 2.1.11

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2019 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes	9
Colossians	9
Introduction to Colossians	10
Colossians 1	12
Colossians 2	42
Colossians 3	67
Colossians 4	93
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy	112
Abstract Nouns	113
Active or Passive	115
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	118
Doublet	121
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'	123
Forms of You	125
How to Translate Names	126
Hyperbole	130
Idiom	134
Inclusive and Exclusive "We"	136
Metaphor	138
Metonymy	144
Parallelism	146
Predictive Past	149
Pronouns	151
Synecdoche	153
Textual Variants	155
Translating Son and Father	157
unfoldingWord® Translation Words	159
admonish, warned, aware	160
adversary, enemy	161
age, aged	162
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather	163
angel, archangel	164
apostle, apostleship	166
authority	167
baptize, baptized, baptism	168
Barnabas	169
bear, bearer, carry	170
beloved	171
bind, bond, bound	172
blameless	173
blood	174
body	175
brother	176

bury, buried, burial	177
call, call out	178
children, child, offspring	180
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect	182
Christ, Messiah	183
church, Church	185
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision	187
clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments	189
Colossae, Colossians	190
comfort, comforts, comforter, comforted	191
companion, fellow worker, friend	192
compassion, compassionate	193
confirm, confirmation, legal	194
corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved	195
courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, ...	196
create, created, creation, creator	198
cross	199
darkness	200
day	201
deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions	202
deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, ...	203
die, dead, deadly, death,	204
dominion	206
earth, earthen, earthly	207
envy, covet	208
epistle, letter	209
evil, wicked, unpleasant	210
face, facial	212
faith	213
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy	214
fear, afraid, dread	216
festival	217
firstborn	218
flesh	219
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned	220
found, founder, foundation	222
free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty	223
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful	224
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out	226
generation	227
Gentile	228
glory, glorious, glorify	229
God	231
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father	233
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry	235
good news, gospel	237

good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best	239
grace, gracious	241
Greek, Grecian	242
hand	243
head	245
heart	246
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	247
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit	248
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	250
honor	252
hope, hoped	253
house	254
humble, humbled, humility	255
image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue	256
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him	257
inherit, inheritance, heir	258
instruct, instruction, instructors	259
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus	260
Jew, Jewish	262
John Mark	263
joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing	264
judge, judgment	266
kind [NOT kindness]	268
kingdom	269
kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven	271
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish	273
labor, laborer, work, hard work	274
life, live, living, alive	275
light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten	277
like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if	278
lord, Lord, master, sir	279
love, beloved	281
Luke	283
lust, lustful, passions, desires	284
manager, steward, stewardship	285
meek, meekness	286
member, body parts	287
might, mighty, mighty works	288
mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded	289
multiply, multiplied, multiplication	290
mystery, hidden truth	291
name	292
new moon	293
obey, obedient	294
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs	295
partial, partiality	296

patient, patience, impatient	297
Paul, Saul	298
peace, peaceful, peacemakers	299
perfect, perfected, perfection, complete	300
persevere, perseverance	301
power, powerful, powerfully	302
pray, prayer	304
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation	305
prison, prisoner, imprison	307
prostrate, worship	308
provoke, provoked, provocation	309
psalm	310
puffed up	311
raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up	312
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance	314
reconcile, reconciled, reconciliation	315
redeem, redeemer, redemption	316
reveal, revealed, revelation	317
right hand	318
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ...	319
rule, ruler, ruling, overrules	321
Sabbath	322
saint	323
seek, search, look for	324
send, sent, send out	325
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women	326
sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication	328
shadow, overshadow, shade	329
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	330
slander, slanders, slanderers, slanderous	332
Son of God, the Son	333
soul, self	335
spirit, spiritual	336
strength, strengthen, strong	338
submit, submission, in submission	340
suffer, suffering	341
teach, teaching, untaught	343
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness	344
throne, enthroned	346
time, untimely, date	347
Timothy	348
to minister, ministry	349
tradition	350
trespass	351
tribulation, distresses, trouble	352
true, truth	353

Tychicus	355
understand, understanding, thinking	356
vain, vanity	357
walk, walked	358
watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out	359
will of God	360
wise, wisdom	361
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, ...	362
work, works, deeds	364
world, worldly	365
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless	366
wrath, fury	367
wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful	368
Contributors	369
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors	369
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors	375
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors	376
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors	376
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors	377



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Colossians

Introduction to Colossians

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the Book of Colossians

1. Greeting, thanksgiving, and prayer (1:1-12)
2. The person and work of Christ
3. Deliverance and redemption (1:13-14)
4. Christ: the Image of the invisible God, and the One who is over all creation (1:15-17)
5. Christ is the Head of the Church, and the Church trusts in him (1:18-2:7)
6. Tests of faithfulness
7. Warnings against false teachers (2:8-19)
8. True godliness is not rigid rules and unbending traditions (2:20-23)
9. Teaching and living
10. Life in Christ (3:1-4)
11. Old and new life (3:5-17)
12. Christian family (3:18-4:1)
13. Christian behavior (4:2-6)
14. Closing and greetings
15. Paul thanks Tychicus and Onesimus (4:7-9)
16. Paul sends greetings from his associates (4:10-14)
17. Paul gives directions to Archippus and the Christians in Laodicea (4:15-17)
18. Paul's personal greeting (4:18)

Who wrote the Book of Colossians?

Paul wrote the Book of Colossians. Paul was from the city of Tarsus. He had been known as Saul in his early life. Before becoming a Christian, Paul was a Pharisee. He persecuted Christians. After he became a Christian, he traveled several times throughout the Roman Empire telling people about Jesus.

Paul wrote this letter while in prison in Rome.

What is the Book of Colossians about?

Paul wrote this letter to the believers in the Asia Minor city of Colossae. The main purpose of this letter was to defend the gospel against false teachers. He did this by praising Jesus as the image of God, sustainer of all things, and head of the church. Paul wanted them to understand that only Christ is needed for God to accept them.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "Colossians." Or they may choose a clearer title, such as "Paul's Letter to the Church in Colossae," or "A Letter to the Christians in Colossae." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What were the religious issues that the church in Colossae struggled with?

In the church in Colossae, there were false teachers. Their exact teaching is unknown. But they probably taught their followers to worship angels and to obey strict rules about religious ceremonies. They probably also taught that a person must be circumcised and can only eat certain types of food. Paul said these false teachings came from the minds of men and not from God.

How did Paul use the imagery of heaven and earth?

In this letter, Paul frequently spoke of heaven as “above.” He distinguished it from the earth, which Scripture speaks of as being “below.” The purpose of this imagery was to teach Christians to live in a way that honors God who lives in heaven above. Paul is not teaching that the earth or the physical world is evil. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#))

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

How are the ideas of “holy” and “sanctify” represented in Colossians in the ULT?

The scriptures use such words to indicate any one of various ideas. For this reason, it is often difficult for translators to represent them well in their versions. In Colossians, these words usually indicate a simple reference to Christians without implying any particular role filled by them. So Colossians in the ULT uses “believers” or “those who believe in him.” (See: 1:2, 12, 26)

Was Jesus created or is he eternal?

Jesus was not a created being but has always existed as God. Jesus also became a human being. There is potential for confusion in Colossians 1:15 where it says Jesus “is the firstborn of all creation.” This statement means that Jesus is dominant over all of creation. It does not mean that he was the first thing God created. Translators should be careful not to imply that Jesus is a created being.

What does Paul mean by the expression “in Christ,” “in the Lord,” etc.?

Paul meant to express the idea of a very close union with Christ and the believers. See the introduction to the book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.

What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Colossians?

For the following verses, some modern versions of the Bible differ from older versions. The ULT text has the modern reading and puts the older reading in a footnote. If a translation of the Bible exists in the general region, translators should consider using the reading found in those versions. If not, translators are advised to follow the modern reading.

- “May grace be to you, and peace from God our Father” (1:2). Some older versions have a longer reading: “Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- “Epaphras, our beloved fellow servant, who is a faithful servant of Christ on our behalf” (1:7). Some older versions read “for you”: “Epaphras, our beloved fellow servant, a faithful servant of Christ for you.”
- “the Father, who has made you able to have a share in the inheritance of the believers in light” (1:12). Some older versions read, “the Father, who has qualified us for a share in the inheritance in light.”
- “In his Son we have redemption” (1:14). Some older versions read, “In his Son we have redemption through his blood.”
- “and forgave us all of our trespasses” (2:13). Some older versions read: “and forgave you all of your trespasses.”
- “When Christ appears, who is your life” (3:4). Some older versions read, “When Christ appears, who is our life.”
- “It is for these things that the wrath of God is coming on the sons of disobedience” (3:6). The ULT, UST, and many other modern versions read this way. However, some modern and older versions read, “It is for these things that the wrath of God is coming.”
- “I sent him to you for this, that you might know the matters about us” (4:8). Some older versions read, “I sent him to you for this, that he might know the matters about you.”

(See: [Textual Variants](#))

Colossians 1

Colossians 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

As in a typical letter, Paul begins his letter in verses 1-2 by introducing Timothy and himself to the Christians in Colossae.

Paul writes much of this chapter around two subjects: who Christ is, and what Christ has done for the Christian.

Special concepts in this chapter

Secret truth

Paul refers to a “secret truth” in this chapter. The role of the church in the plans of God was once unknown. But God has now revealed it. Part of this involves the Gentiles having equal standing with the Jews in the plans of God. (See: [reveal](#), [revealed](#), [revelation](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Images for Christian living

Paul uses many different images to describe Christian living. In this chapter, he uses the images of “walking” and “bearing fruit.” (See: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [unfruitful](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Verse 24 is a paradox: “Now I rejoice in my sufferings for you.” People do not usually rejoice when they suffer. But in verses 25-29 Paul explains why his suffering is good. (Colossians 1:24)

Colossians 1:1

General Information:

Though this letter is from Paul and Timothy to the Colossian believers, later in the letter Paul makes it clear that he is the writer. Most likely Timothy was with him and wrote the words down as Paul spoke. Throughout this letter the words “we,” “our,” and “ours” include the Colossians unless noted otherwise. The words “you,” “your,” and “yours” refer to the Colossian believers and so are plural unless noted otherwise. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#) and [Forms of You](#))

**an apostle of Christ Jesus through the will of God (ULT)
whom God chose to send to you as an apostle of the
Messiah Jesus (UST)**

“whom God chose to be an apostle of Christ Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

- of Christ Jesus
- brother
- of God
- an apostle
- the will of God
- of Christ
- Timothy
- Paul

Translation Words - UST

- of the Messiah Jesus
- our fellow believer
- whom God chose
- an apostle
- whom God chose
- of the Messiah
- Timothy
- Paul

ULT

¹ [Paul](#), [an apostle of Christ](#) Jesus through [the will of God](#), and [Timothy](#) our [brother](#),

UST

¹ I, [Paul](#), write this to the dear fellow believers in the city of Colossae. This is from Paul, [whom God chose](#) to send to you as [an apostle of the Messiah](#) Jesus, and this letter is also from [Timothy](#), [our fellow believer](#) joined to the Messiah. We are sending this letter to all of you.

Colossians 1:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- May grace be
- Jesus Christ
- the Lord
- brothers
- God
- believers
- God...Father
- faithful
- Christ
- Christ
- in Christ
- Colossae
- peace

Translation Words - UST

- will give you his kindness
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- believers
- God
- saint
- God...Father
- faithful
- the Messiah
- Christ, Messiah
- belong to the Messiah
- Colossae, Colossians
- peace

ULT

² to the [believers](#) and [faithful brothers in Christ](#) who are at [Colossae](#). [May grace be](#) to you, and [peace](#) from [God](#) our [Father](#) and [the Lord Jesus Christ](#). ^[1]

UST

² We send this letter to those God has set apart for himself—those who are [faithful believers](#) who [belong to the Messiah](#). We pray that [God](#) our [Father](#) [will give you his kindness](#) and [peace](#).

Colossians 1:3

We give thanks...of our Lord...always (ULT)

We...thank...of our Lord...often (UST)

These words do not include the Colossians. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus Christ
- Lord
- to God
- to God...the Father
- and we...pray
- Christ

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus the Messiah
- of...Lord
- God
- God...the Father
- we are praying
- the Messiah

ULT

³ We give thanks [to God, the Father](#) of our [Lord Jesus Christ, and we](#) always [pray](#) for you.

UST

³ We often thank [God, the Father](#) of our [Lord Jesus the Messiah](#), while [we are praying](#) for you.

Colossians 1:4

We have heard (ULT)

we have heard (UST)

Paul is excluding his audience. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

of your faith in Christ Jesus (ULT)

you trust in the Messiah Jesus (UST)

“your belief in Christ Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [love](#)
- [set apart for God](#)
- [faith](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [in Christ Jesus](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [you love](#)
- [those whom God has set apart for himself](#)
- [you trust](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [in the Messiah Jesus](#)

ULT

⁴ We have heard of your [faith in Christ Jesus](#) and of the [love](#) that you have for all those [set apart for God](#).

UST

⁴ We give God thanks because we have heard that [you trust in the Messiah Jesus](#) and that [you love](#) all [those whom God has set apart for himself](#).

Colossians 1:5

**You have this love because of the certain hope reserved for you in heaven (ULT)
because you confidently are waiting for the things God is reserving for you in heaven (UST)**

Here “certain hope” stands for what the believer can confidently expect, that is, the things that God has promised to do for all believers. These things are spoken of as if they were physical objects that God was keeping in heaven for the believers to possess later. Alternate translation: “because you are certain that God, who is in heaven, will do the many good things that he has promised you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the word of truth, the gospel (ULT)
the true message, the good news about the Messiah (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) “the message about the truth, the gospel” or 2) “the true message, the gospel.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [truth](#)
- [gospel](#)
- [certain hope](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [true](#)
- [good news about the Messiah](#)
- [you confidently are waiting](#)

ULT

⁵ You have this love because of the [certain hope](#) reserved for you in [heaven](#). You heard about this confident expectation before in the word of [truth](#), the [gospel](#),

UST

⁵ You love our fellow believers because [you confidently are waiting](#) for the things God is reserving for you in [heaven](#). You first heard about these things when you heard the [true](#) message, the [good news about the Messiah](#).

Colossians 1:6

is...bearing fruit and is growing (ULT)

"Fruit" here is a metaphor for "result" or "outcome." Alternate translation: "This gospel is having good results, more and more" or "This gospel is having increasing results" (See: [Metaphor](#))

in all the world (ULT)

to everyone in the world (UST)

This is a generalization referring to the part of the world that they knew about. Alternate translation: "throughout the world" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

which...in...about the grace...of God...truth (ULT)

"the true grace of God"

Translation Words - ULT

- [grace](#)
- [of God](#)
- [truth](#)
- [world](#)
- [bearing fruit](#)
- [learned](#)
- [Just as this gospel](#)
- [it likewise has been doing this](#) (2)
- [day](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [how...kind God is](#)
- [how...kind God is](#)
- [truly](#)
- [world](#)
- [is like a field planted with crops that are growing](#)
- [understood](#)
- [like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if](#)
- [like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if](#) (2)
- [first](#)

ULT

⁶ which has come to you. [Just as this gospel](#) is also [bearing fruit](#) and is growing in all the [world, it likewise has been doing this](#) in you also from the [day](#) you heard it and [learned](#) about the [grace of God](#) in [truth](#).

UST

⁶ Believers are proclaiming this good news that you heard in Colossae to everyone in the [world](#). It is just as it has worked in you also, from the [first](#) day you heard it and [understood how truly kind God is](#). The good news [is like a field planted with crops that are growing](#) and will give a very large harvest.

Colossians 1:7

our...our (ULT)

us...us (UST)

The word “our” does not include the Colossians. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

you learned it from Epaphras, our beloved fellow servant, who (ULT)

“gospel. It is exactly what you learned from Epaphras, who is our beloved fellow servant and who” or “gospel. It is exactly what Epaphras, our beloved fellow servant, taught you. He”

Epaphras, our beloved fellow servant, who is a faithful servant of Christ on our behalf

Here “on our behalf” means that Epaphras was doing work for Christ that Paul himself would have done if he were not in prison.

Epaphras (ULT)

Epaphras (UST)

the man who preached the gospel to the people in Colossae (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a...servant](#)
- [faithful](#)
- [beloved](#)
- [of Christ](#)
- [This is the gospel as](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [works for](#)
- [faithfully](#)
- [We love him](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if](#)

ULT

⁷ [This is the gospel as](#) you learned it from Epaphras, our [beloved](#) fellow servant, who is a [faithful servant of Christ](#) on our behalf. ^[2]

UST

⁷ Epaphras taught you the good news. [We love him](#) because he serves the Messiah together with us and [works for](#) the [Messiah faithfully](#) in our place.

Colossians 1:8

to us (ULT)

us (UST)

The word “us” does not include the Colossians. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

your love in the Spirit (ULT)

Paul speaks of the Holy Spirit as if he were a place in which the believers were located. Alternate translation: “how the Holy Spirit has enabled you to love believers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [love](#)
- [the Spirit](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you love](#)
- [God’s Spirit](#)

ULT

⁸ Epaphras has made known to us your [love](#) in [the Spirit](#).

UST

⁸ He told us that [you love](#) all God’s people because [God’s Spirit](#) has empowered you to love God and others.

Colossians 1:9

Connecting Statement:

Because the Spirit has enabled them to love others, Paul prays for them and tells them here how he prays for them.

Because of this love (ULT)

“Because the Holy Spirit has enabled you to love other believers”

we...we heard this...We have been asking (ULT)

The word “we” does not include the Colossians. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

from the day we heard this (ULT)

Since the time we heard (UST)

“from the day Epaphras told us these things”

that you will be filled with the knowledge of his will (ULT)

Paul speaks of the Colossian believers as though they were containers. Alternate translation: “that God will fill you with what you need to know so that you can do his will” (See: [Metaphor](#))

of this love...in all wisdom...spiritual understanding (ULT)

“, so that the Holy Spirit will make you wise and able to understand what God wants you to do”

Translation Words - ULT

- [wisdom](#)
- [spiritual](#)
- [of his will](#)
- [praying](#)
- [understanding](#)
- [day](#)
- [knowledge](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to make you wise](#)
- [you will understand what God's Spirit is teaching you](#)
- [he wants you to do](#)
- [we have...been praying](#)
- [you will understand what God's Spirit is teaching you](#)
- [Since the time](#)
- [to show you everything](#)

ULT

⁹ Because of this love, from the [day](#) we heard this we have not stopped [praying](#) for you. We have been asking that you will be filled with the [knowledge of his will](#) in all [wisdom](#) and [spiritual understanding](#).

UST

⁹ [Since the time](#) we heard about how you love, [we have](#) always [been praying](#) for you. We ask God [to show you everything he wants you to do](#), and [to make you wise](#) so that [you will understand what God's Spirit is teaching you](#).

Colossians 1:10

We have been praying that you will walk (ULT) you will live (UST)

The word “we” does not include the Colossians. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

We have been praying that you will walk worthily of the Lord (ULT) you will live in a way that will help others honor the Lord (UST)

Walking here signifies behavior in life. Alternate translation: “We have been praying that you will live the way God expects you to” (See: [Metaphor](#))

in every pleasing way (ULT) he will approve of you (UST)

“in ways that will please the Lord”

We have been praying that you will bear fruit (ULT)

Paul is speaking of the Colossian believers as if they were trees or plants. As a plant grows and bears fruit, so also believers are to keep getting to know God better and doing good deeds. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [worthily](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [deed](#)
- [good](#)
- [We have been praying that you will bear fruit](#)
- [We have been praying that you will walk](#)
- [knowledge](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [will help others honor](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [good thing](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
- [fruit, fruitful, unfruitful](#)
- [you will live](#)
- [to understand](#)

ULT

¹⁰ [We have been praying that you will walk worthily](#) of the [Lord](#) in every pleasing way. [We have been praying that you will bear fruit](#) in every [good deed](#) and that you will grow in the [knowledge](#) of [God](#).

UST

¹⁰ We pray that [you will live](#) in a way that [will help others honor](#) the [Lord](#) also, so that he will approve of you. We pray that you will grow [to understand God](#) more and do every [good thing](#) that he tells you to do.

Colossians 1:11

We pray you may be strengthened (ULT) God will strengthen you (UST)

The word “we” refers to Paul and Timothy but not to the Colossians.
(See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

into all perseverance and patience (ULT)

Paul speaks of the Colossian believers as if God would move them into a location of perseverance and patience. In reality, he is praying that they will never stop trusting in God and that they will be completely patient as they honor him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [ability](#)
- [of...glory](#)
- [power](#)
- [joy](#)
- [We pray you may be strengthened](#)
- [patience](#)
- [perseverance](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [his mighty power](#)
- [glory, glorious, glorify](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing](#)
- [God will strengthen you](#)
- [patiently](#)
- [endure](#)

ULT

¹¹ [We pray you may be strengthened](#) in every [ability](#) according to the [power](#) of his [glory](#) into all [perseverance](#) and [patience](#) with [joy](#).

UST

¹¹ We pray that [God will strengthen you](#) with all [his mighty power](#), so that you will [patiently endure](#) every difficulty.

Colossians 1:12

has made you able to have a share (ULT)

“has allowed you to share”

has made you able (ULT)

he has declared...you...worthy (UST)

Here Paul is focusing on his readers as receivers of God’s blessings. But he does not mean that he himself has no share in those blessings.

in the inheritance (ULT)

the things that he is keeping for you (UST)

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. (See: [Metaphor](#))

in light (ULT)

in the light of his presence (UST)

This idea is opposite to the idea of the dominion of darkness in the next verse. Alternate translation: “in the glory of his presence” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [inheritance](#)
- [saints](#)
- [Father](#)
- [light](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the things that he is keeping for you](#)
- [saint](#)
- [Father](#)
- [light of his presence](#)

ULT

¹² We pray that you will give thanks to the [Father](#), who has made you able to have a share in the [inheritance](#) of the [saints](#) in [light](#). ^[3]

UST

¹² We pray that you will be rejoicing and thanking God our [Father](#), because he has declared you worthy to be with the others whom he has set apart for himself; this is so he can give you all [the things that he is keeping for you](#) when you are with him in the [light of his presence](#).

Colossians 1:13

Connecting Statement:

Paul talks about the ways in which Christ is excellent.

He has rescued us (ULT)

God our Father has rescued us (UST)

“God has rescued us”

the dominion of darkness (ULT)

the evil that controlled us (UST)

“Darkness” here is a metaphor for evil. Alternate translation: “the evil forces that controlled us” (See: [Metaphor](#))

of his beloved Son (ULT)

his Son, whom he loves (UST)

“Son” is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [beloved](#)
- [of...Son](#)
- [dominion](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [has rescued](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [whom...loves](#)
- [Son](#)
- [the evil that controlled us](#)
- [to rule](#)
- [the evil that controlled us](#)
- [God...has rescued](#)

ULT

¹³ He [has rescued](#) us from the [dominion](#) of [darkness](#) and transferred us to the [kingdom](#) of his [beloved Son](#),

UST

¹³ [God](#) our Father [has rescued](#) us from [the evil that controlled us](#); he has made his [Son](#), whom he [loves](#), [to rule](#) over us now.

Colossians 1:14

in whom (ULT)

Paul often speaks as if the believers were “in” Jesus Christ or “in” God. This can be translated as the beginning of a new sentence. Alternate translation: “by means of whom” or “By means of his Son” or “Because of his Son” (See: [Metaphor](#))

we have redemption, the forgiveness of sins (ULT)
he has set us free from that evil; that is, he has forgiven our sins (UST)

ULT

¹⁴ in whom we have [redemption](#), the [forgiveness of sins](#).^[4]

UST

¹⁴ By means of his Son [he has set us free](#) from that evil; that is, [he has forgiven](#) our [sins](#).

The nouns “redemption” and “forgiveness” can be translated as verbs. Alternate translation: “we are redeemed; our sins are forgiven” or “God redeems us; he forgives our sins” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of sins](#)
- [forgiveness](#)
- [redemption](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sins](#)
- [he has forgiven](#)
- [he has set us free](#)

Colossians 1:15

He is the image of the invisible God (ULT)

When we know the Son, we know what God is like, even though we cannot see him (UST)

“His Son is the image of the invisible God.” Here “image” does not mean a representation of something that is visible. Instead, “image” here means that by knowing the Son, we learn what God the Father is like. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the firstborn of all creation (ULT)

first place over everything that he has created (UST)

The expression “firstborn” does not refer to when Jesus was born. Instead, it refers to his position as the eternal Son of God the Father. In this sense, “firstborn” is a metaphor meaning “most important.” Jesus is the most important and the unique Son of God. Alternate Translation: “God’s Son, the most important one over all creation” (See: [Metaphor](#))

of all creation (ULT)

over everything that he has created (UST)

The noun “creation” can be translated with a verb. Alternate Translation: “all that God created” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [creation](#)
- [the image](#)
- [the firstborn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When we know the Son, we know what God is like](#)
- [that he has created](#)
- [When we know the Son, we know what God is like](#)
- [first place](#)

ULT

¹⁵ He is [the image](#) of the invisible [God](#), [the firstborn](#) of all [creation](#).

UST

¹⁵ [When we know the Son, we know what God is like](#), even though we cannot see him. The Son has [first place](#) over everything [that he has created](#).

Colossians 1:16

For by him all things were created (ULT)

For the Son created all things (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For by him God created all things" or "God caused the Son to create all things" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

all things were created by him and for him (ULT)

This can be stated in active form. God caused the Son to create all things for the Son's glory. Alternate translation: "For by him and for him God created all things" or "God caused him to create all things for himself" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heavens](#)
- [dominions](#)
- [authorities](#)
- [governments](#)
- [thrones](#)
- [earth](#)
- [were created](#)
- [were created](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sky](#)
- [angelic beings](#)
- [authorities](#)
- [powers](#)
- [throne, enthroned](#)
- [earth](#)
- [the Son created](#)
- [the Son created](#)

ULT

¹⁶ For by him all things [were created](#), those in the [heavens](#) and those on the [earth](#), the visible and the invisible things. Whether [thrones](#) or [dominions](#) or [governments](#) or [authorities](#), all things [were created](#) by him and for him.

UST

¹⁶ For [the Son created](#) all things, as the Father desired him to do: Everything in the [sky](#) and everything on [earth](#), everything that we can see and everything that we cannot see, such as [angelic beings](#) of all kinds and [powers](#) and [authorities](#), all things exist because [the Son created](#) them because the Father wanted him to. And they exist for him.

Colossians 1:17

He...is before all things (ULT)

The Son himself existed before anything else (UST)

“It is he who existed before all things”

in him all things hold together (ULT)

he holds everything together (UST)

Paul is speaking here of the Son controlling all things as if he were physically holding them together. “he holds everything together”
(See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metaphor](#))

ULT

¹⁷ He himself is before all things, and in him all things hold together.

UST

¹⁷ The Son himself existed before anything else, and he holds everything together.

Colossians 1:18

He...is the head (ULT)

He rules (UST)

“Jesus Christ, the Son of God, is the head”

He...is the head of the body, the church (ULT)

He rules all believers—the church (UST)

Paul speaks of Jesus’ position over the church as if he were the head on the human body. As the head rules the body, so does Jesus rule the church. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the...beginning (ULT)

He rules...he started it (UST)

“the originating authority.” He is the first chief or founder.

and the firstborn from among the dead (ULT)

He was the first person to come back to life (UST)

Jesus is the first person to die and come back to life, never to die again.

Translation Words - ULT

- [church](#)
- [body](#)
- [head](#)
- [dead](#)
- [and the firstborn](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the church](#)
- [all believers](#)
- [He rules](#)
- [to come back to life](#)
- [He was the first person](#)

ULT

¹⁸ He is the [head](#) of the [body](#), the [church](#). He is the beginning [and the firstborn](#) from among the [dead](#), so he has first place among all things.

UST

¹⁸ [He rules all believers—the church—](#) like a person’s head rules his body. He rules over the church because he started it. [He was the first person to come back to life](#) with a perfect body. So he is greater than every thing.

Colossians 1:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

19 For he was pleased that all his fullness should live in him,

UST

19 God the Father was pleased to make everything he is to live in the Messiah.

Colossians 1:20

through the blood of his cross

“by means of the blood Jesus shed on the cross”

the blood of his cross (ULT)

by causing the Son to die on the cross (UST)

Here “blood” stands for the death of Christ on the cross. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [blood](#)
- [of his cross](#)
- [to reconcile](#)
- [God made peace](#)
- [earth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [by causing the Son to die on the cross](#)
- [by causing the Son to die on the cross](#)
- [to bring...back](#)
- [God offered peace](#)
- [earth](#)

ULT

²⁰ and [to reconcile](#) through the Son all things to himself. [God made peace](#) through the [blood of his cross](#). Through him, God reconciled all things, whether the things on the [earth](#) or the things in [heaven](#).

UST

²⁰ It also pleased God [to bring](#) everything [back](#) to himself in peace through Jesus. [God offered peace](#) to all people and all things everywhere on [earth](#) and in [heaven](#). He did this [by causing the Son to die on the cross](#) as a sacrifice, shedding his blood as he died.

Colossians 1:21

Connecting Statement:

Paul makes it clear that God has now revealed that Christ exchanges the sin of Gentile believers for his holiness.

At one time, you also (ULT)

“There was a time when you Colossian believers also”

strangers to God (ULT)

God considered you his enemies (UST)

“were like people whom God did not know” or “had pushed God away”

Translation Words - ULT

- [deeds](#)
- [evil](#)
- [were his enemies](#)
- [mind](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you did...deeds](#)
- [evil](#)
- [unfriendly to God](#)
- [you thought](#)

ULT

²¹ At one time, you also were strangers to God and [were his enemies](#) in [mind](#) and in [evil deeds](#).

UST

²¹ Before you believed in the Messiah, God considered you his enemies, and you were [unfriendly to God](#) because [you thought](#) evil thoughts and because [you did evil deeds](#).

Colossians 1:22

He did this in order to present you holy and blameless and above reproach before him (ULT)

Paul is describing the Colossians as though Jesus had physically cleaned them, put them in clean clothes, and brought them to stand before God the Father. (See: [Metaphor](#))

blameless and above reproach (ULT)

Paul uses two words that mean almost the same thing to emphasize the idea of perfection. Alternate translation: “perfect” (See: [Parallelism](#))

before him (ULT)

This expression of location stands for “in God’s view” or “in God’s mind” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#)
- [physical](#)
- [blameless](#)
- [above reproach](#)
- [body](#)
- [he has reconciled you](#)
- [death](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [when Jesus gave up his body](#)
- [blameless](#)
- [nothing wrong](#)
- [when Jesus gave up his body](#)
- [God has offered peace](#)
- [by dying](#)

ULT

²² But now [he has reconciled you](#) by his [physical body](#) through [death](#). He did this in order to present you [holy](#) and [blameless](#) and [above reproach](#) before him,

UST

²² But now [God has offered peace](#) between yourselves and himself and has made you his friends. He did this [when Jesus gave up his body](#) and life for us [by dying](#). This made it possible for us to belong to God; he finds [nothing wrong](#) in us now, nothing to blame us for.

Colossians 1:23

**This is the gospel that was proclaimed (ULT)
people...have heard (UST)**

that believers proclaimed (See: [Active or Passive](#))

in the...to every person created...under...heaven (ULT)

“to every person in the world”

This is the gospel of which I, Paul, became a servant (ULT)

Paul was actually a servant of God. Alternate translation: “the gospel that I, Paul, serve God by proclaiming” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [a servant](#)
- [gospel](#)
- [faith](#)
- [certain hope](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [was proclaimed](#)
- [established](#)
- [person created](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [serving God](#)
- [good news](#)
- [to trust](#)
- [God has promised to do](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [people...have heard](#)
- [found, founder, foundation](#)
- [the world](#)

ULT

²³ if you continue in the [faith](#), [established](#) and firm and not moved away from the [certain hope](#) of the [gospel](#) that you heard. This is the gospel that [was proclaimed](#) to every [person created](#) under [heaven](#). This is the gospel of which I, [Paul](#), became [a servant](#).

UST

²³ But you must continue [to trust](#) the Messiah completely; then you will be like a house that they built on solid rock. Do not for any reason stop believing in what [God has promised to do](#) for you in the [good news](#) that [people](#) all over [the world](#) [have heard](#). This is the same good news that I, [Paul](#), am [serving God](#) by proclaiming to people.

Colossians 1:24

in...I fill up...my flesh what is lacking of the afflictions of Christ (ULT)

Paul speaks about the suffering that he continues to experience. He may be acknowledging here that there is much suffering that he and all other Christians must endure before Christ comes again, and that Christ in a spiritual sense joins with them in experiencing these hardships. Paul certainly does not mean that Christ's sufferings alone were not enough to provide salvation for the believers.

I fill up...in my flesh (ULT)

Paul speaks of his body as if it were a container that could hold suffering. (See: [Metaphor](#))

for the sake of his body, which is the church (ULT)

Paul often speaks of the church, the group of all Christian believers, as if it were Christ's body. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [church](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [of...body](#)
- [of Christ](#)
- [afflictions](#)
- [I rejoice](#)
- [sufferings](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [church](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [body](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [tribulation, distresses, trouble](#)
- [I rejoice](#)
- [I am suffering](#)

ULT

²⁴ Now [I rejoice](#) in my [sufferings](#) for you, and I fill up in my [flesh](#) what is lacking of the [afflictions of Christ](#) for the sake of his [body](#), which is the [church](#).

UST

²⁴ Now [I rejoice](#) that [I am suffering](#) for your benefit. Yes, in order to help the [church](#), which is like the Messiah's body, I suffer things that must still happen.

Colossians 1:25

to fulfill the word of God (ULT) to proclaim the full message of God (UST)

This means to bring about the purpose of God's gospel message, which is that it be preached and believed. "Word of God" here is a metonym for the message from God. Alternate translation: "to be obedient to what God has instructed" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- from God
- of God (2)
- word of God
- a servant
- to fulfill
- responsibility

Translation Words - UST

- God
- of God (2)
- full message of God
- his servant
- to proclaim
- special work

ULT

²⁵ It is of this church that I am [a servant](#), according to the [responsibility from God](#) that was given to me for you, [to fulfill](#) the [word of God](#).

UST

²⁵ God made me [his servant](#) and gave to me [special work](#) to do, which is [to proclaim](#) the [full message of God](#) to non-Jewish people like you.

Colossians 1:26

This is the mystery that was hidden (ULT) God did not tell...this mystery (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This is the secret truth that God had hidden" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for ages and for generations

The words "ages" and "generations" refer to the time period from the creation of the world until the time when the gospel was preached.

now...it has been revealed (ULT) now...he has revealed (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "now God has revealed it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [it has been revealed](#)
- [who believe](#)
- [mystery](#)
- [ages](#)
- [generations](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he has revealed](#)
- [to those whom he has set apart for himself](#)
- [mystery](#)
- [ancient times](#)
- [generations](#)

ULT

²⁶ This is the [mystery](#) that was hidden for [ages](#) and for [generations](#). But now [it has been revealed](#) to those [who believe](#) in him.

UST

²⁶ From [ancient times](#), for [generations](#), God did not tell this good news, but now [he has revealed](#) this [mystery to those whom he has set apart for himself](#).

Colossians 1:27

the...riches of the glory of this secret truth (ULT)

Paul speaks of the value of this secret truth about God as if it were a treasure of material wealth. "riches" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Christ in you (ULT)

the Messiah will live in you (UST)

Paul speaks of the believers as if they were actual containers in which Christ is present. This is one of his ways of expressing the union of the believers with Christ. (See: [Metaphor](#))

of the glory...the hope (ULT)

this wonderful secret...you confidently expect (UST)

"so you can confidently expect to share in God's glory"

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [glory](#)
- [of glory](#) (2)
- [wanted](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [hope](#)
- [of...secret truth](#)
- [to make known](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Gentile](#)
- [this wonderful secret](#)
- [God's glory](#) (2)
- [planned](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [you confidently expect](#)
- [this wonderful secret](#)
- [to tell](#)

ULT

²⁷ It is to them that [God wanted to make known](#) the riches of the [glory](#) of this [secret truth](#) among the [Gentiles](#), which is [Christ](#) in you, the [hope of glory](#).

UST

²⁷ It is to these people—Jews and non-Jews like yourselves just as much—that [God planned to tell this wonderful secret](#). It is this: [the Messiah](#) will live in you and make [you confidently expect](#) to share in [God's glory](#)!

Colossians 1:28

we proclaim. We admonish...we teach...we may present (ULT)

These words do not include the Colossians. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

We admonish every person (ULT)

"We warn everyone"

so that we may present every person (ULT)

You may need to make explicit to whom they will present every person. Alternate translation: "so that we may present to God every person" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

complete (ULT)

completely (UST)

Being complete is a metaphor for being spiritually mature. Alternate translation: "spiritually mature" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [wisdom](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [in Christ](#)
- [we teach](#)
- [proclaim](#)
- [complete](#)
- [We admonish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [joined to the Messiah](#)
- [teaching](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [completely](#)
- [wisely warning](#)

ULT

²⁸ This is he whom we [proclaim](#). [We admonish](#) every person, and [we teach](#) every person with all [wisdom](#), so that we may present every person [complete in Christ](#).

UST

²⁸ We are [wisely warning](#) and [teaching](#) every person about the Messiah so that we might bring into God's presence each one as knowing God [completely, joined to the Messiah](#).

Colossians 1:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [power](#)
- [I labor](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [strength](#)
- [I work my hardest](#)

ULT

²⁹ For this also [I labor](#) and strive according to his energy that is at work in me in [power](#).

1:2 ^[1] Some early copies leave out, *and the Lord Jesus Christ* .

1:7 ^[2] Some versions read, *on your behalf* .

1:12 ^[3] Some versions read, *who has made us able to have a share* .

1:14 ^[4] Some versions read, *in whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins* .

UST

²⁹ It is to do this that [I work my hardest](#), because the Messiah is giving me [strength](#).

Colossians 2

Colossians 2 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Circumcision and baptism

In verses 11-12, Paul uses both the old covenant sign of circumcision and the new covenant sign of baptism to show how Christians are united with Christ and freed from sin.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Flesh

This is a complex issue. “Flesh” is possibly a metaphor for our sinful nature. Paul is not teaching that the physical part of man is sinful. Paul appears to be teaching that, while Christians are alive (“in the flesh”), we will continue to sin. But our new nature will be fighting against our old nature. Paul also uses “flesh” in this chapter to refer to the physical body.

Implicit information

Paul mentions several issues in this chapter that imply information about the context of the church in Colossae. It is best to allow the text to remain uncertain over the actual details. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Colossians 2:1

Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to encourage the believers in Colossae and Laodicea to understand that Christ is God and that he lives in believers, so they should live in the same way they received him.

how great a struggle I have had for you (ULT)

I am doing my best to help you (UST)

Paul has exerted much effort in developing their purity and understanding of the gospel.

for those at Laodicea (ULT)

those in Laodicea (UST)

This was a city very close to Colossae where there was also a church for which Paul was praying.

for as many as have not seen my face in the flesh (ULT)

Here “face in the flesh” represents the person as a whole. Alternate translation: “all those who have never seen me personally” or “all those whom I have never met face to face” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the flesh](#)
- [face](#)
- [to know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [personally](#)
- [me](#)
- [to realize](#)

ULT

¹ For I want you [to know](#) how great a struggle I have had for you, and for those at Laodicea, and for as many as have not seen my [face](#) in [the flesh](#).

UST

¹ I want you [to realize](#) that I am doing my best to help you and those in Laodicea, and also the believers who have never seen [me personally](#).

Colossians 2:2

I work so that...their hearts (ULT) so that...them (UST)

Paul includes the Galatians even though he uses a different pronoun.
Alternate translation: "so that their hearts and yours" (See: [Pronouns](#))

by being brought together (ULT) to love each other (UST)

This means brought together in a close relationship.

all the riches of full assurance of understanding (ULT)

Paul speaks of a person who is completely sure that the good news is true as though that person were rich in physical things. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the secret truth of God

This is knowledge that can be revealed only by God.

Christ (ULT) the Messiah (UST)

Jesus Christ is the secret truth revealed by God.

Translation Words - ULT

- [love](#)
- [of God](#)
- [hearts](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [secret truth](#)
- [may be encouraged](#)
- [of understanding](#)
- [the knowledge](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to love each other](#)
- [God](#)
- [them](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [secret truth](#)
- [I might encourage](#)
- [completely](#)
- [understand](#)

ULT

² I work so that their [hearts may be encouraged](#) by being brought together in [love](#) and into all the riches of full assurance [of understanding](#), into [the knowledge](#) of the [secret truth of God](#): [Christ](#).

UST

² I do this so that [I might encourage them](#) and you yourselves [to love each other](#) and unite yourselves together. I desire that you all confidently and [completely understand](#) this [secret truth](#) about [God](#) and that this truth is [the Messiah](#)!

Colossians 2:3

In him all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge are hidden (ULT)

Only Christ can reveal God's true wisdom and knowledge. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has hidden all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge in Christ" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the treasures of wisdom and knowledge (ULT)

Paul speaks of God's wisdom and knowledge as if they were material wealth. Alternate translation: "the very precious wisdom and knowledge" (See: [Metaphor](#))

of wisdom and knowledge (ULT)

what God is thinking and how wise he is (UST)

These words mean basically the same thing here. Paul uses them together to emphasize that all spiritual understanding comes from Christ. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of wisdom](#)
- [knowledge](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [how wise he is](#)
- [what God is thinking](#)

ULT

³ In him all the treasures [of wisdom](#) and [knowledge](#) are hidden.

UST

³ It is only by means of the Messiah that we can know [what God is thinking](#) and [how wise he is](#).

Colossians 2:4

may trick (ULT)

may deceive (UST)

This means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, so he acts on that belief, and suffers harm as a result.

persuasive speech (ULT)

speech that will make a person think differently

ULT

⁴ I say this so that no one may trick you with persuasive speech.

UST

⁴ I am telling you this in order that no one may deceive you.

Colossians 2:5

I am not with you in the flesh (ULT)

I am absent from you physically (UST)

The person's flesh, or physical body, is a metonym for the person.
Alternate translation: "not physically present with you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

I am with you in spirit (ULT)

as if I were indeed with you. Yet I am (UST)

Being with someone in spirit is a metaphor for thinking continually about that person. Alternate translation: "I continually think about you" (See: [Idiom](#))

good order (ULT)

doing things properly

the strength...your...faith (ULT)

without giving up...you...trust (UST)

"how nothing and no one can cause you to stop believing"

Translation Words - ULT

- flesh
- in spirit
- faith
- Christ
- in...Christ
- I rejoice

Translation Words - UST

- physically
- as if I were indeed
- trust
- the Messiah
- in the Messiah
- rejoicing

ULT

⁵ For although indeed I am not with you in the [flesh](#), yet I am with you [in spirit](#). [I rejoice](#) and see your good order and the strength of your [faith](#) in [Christ](#).

UST

⁵ Even though I am absent from you [physically](#), I am very much concerned about you, just [as if I were indeed](#) with you. Yet I am [rejoicing](#) because I know that you follow the Messiah in a way that no one can stop you, that you [trust in the Messiah](#) without giving up.

Colossians 2:6

walk in him (ULT)

live by trusting him (UST)

Walking on a path is a metaphor for how a person lives his life. The words "in him" refer to being in close relationship with Christ and so doing what pleases him. Alternate translation: "live your lives the way he wants you to" or "live so that people can see that you belong to him" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Christ...Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [you received](#)
- [walk](#)
- [as](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Messiah Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [You began to believe](#)
- [live](#)
- [like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if](#)

ULT

⁶ Therefore, [as you received Christ Jesus](#) the [Lord](#), [walk](#) in him.

UST

⁶ [You began to believe](#) in the [Messiah](#) Jesus the [Lord](#) by trusting in him, so also [live](#) by trusting him.

Colossians 2:7

Be rooted...be built up...be established...and abound (ULT)

These words explain what it means to “walk in him.” (See: [Idiom](#))

Be rooted...in him (ULT)

Paul speaks of a person with true faith in Christ as if that person were a tree growing in solid ground with deep roots. (See: [Metaphor](#))

be built up in him (ULT)

Paul speaks of a person with true faith in Christ as if that person were a building that has a strong foundation. (See: [Metaphor](#))

be established in faith (ULT)

“trust in Jesus for everything”

just as you were taught (ULT)

This is best stated without naming or otherwise calling attention to the teacher, who was Epaphras ([Colossians 1:7](#)). Alternate translation: “just as you learned” or “just as they taught you” or “just as he taught you”

and abound in thanksgiving (ULT)

always give thanks (UST)

Paul speaks of thanksgiving as if it were objects that a person could obtain more of. Alternate translation: “be very thankful to God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- in faith
- you were taught
- and abound
- be established
- just as

Translation Words - UST

- faith
- You learned
- always
- confirm, confirmation, legal
- like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

ULT

⁷ Be rooted and be built up in him, and [be established in faith just as you were taught, and abound](#) in thanksgiving.

UST

⁷ You should rely completely on the Messiah Jesus the Lord, just like a tree spreads its roots deep into the ground. [You learned](#) to trust the Messiah very much in this way, like men build a house on a good foundation. And you should [always](#) give thanks to God.

Colossians 2:8

Connecting Statement:

Paul urges the believers to be careful not to turn to the words and rules of others because nothing can add to the fullness of God that believers have in Christ.

See that (ULT)

Do...believe (UST)

"Make sure that"

captures you (ULT)

Paul speaks of the way a person can believe false teachings (because they believe false things or love the wrong things) as if someone had physically caught and held that person by force. (See: [Metaphor](#))

philosophy (ULT)

religious doctrines and beliefs that are not from God's word but are based on man's thoughts about God and life

empty deceit (ULT)

Paul speaks of false ideas that produce nothing and so are without value as though they are containers with nothing in them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

to the tradition of men...the elements of the world (ULT)

Both Jewish traditions and pagan (Gentile) belief systems are worthless. "The elements of the world" perhaps refers to evil spirits that claimed to rule the world and that were adored by people. But some interpreters view "the elements of the world" as people's basic teachings about the world.

Translation Words - ULT

- [world](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [empty](#)
- [tradition](#)
- [deceit](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [world](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [vain, vanity](#)
- [what people have taught](#)
- [deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions](#)

ULT

⁸ See that no one captures you through philosophy and [empty deceit](#), according to the [tradition](#) of men, conforming to the elements of the [world](#), and not conforming to [Christ](#).

UST

⁸ Do not believe anyone who says that you must obey [what people have taught](#) about how to honor God or that you must obey what they worship in this [world](#). Instead, obey the Messiah,

Colossians 2:9

in him all the fullness of God lives in bodily form (ULT)

“God’s total nature lives in physical form in Christ”

Translation Words - ULT

- of God

Translation Words - UST

- is fully God

ULT

⁹ For in him all the fullness [of God](#) lives in bodily form.

UST

⁹ because the man Jesus the Messiah [is fully God](#).

Colossians 2:10

You have been...filled in him (ULT)

God has given you everything you need (UST)

Paul speaks of people as though they were containers into which God has placed Christ. Alternate translation: "You are made complete in Christ" (See: [Metaphor](#))

who is the head over every power and authority (ULT)

Christ is the ruler over every other ruler (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [authority](#)
- [head](#)
- [power](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [angel](#)
- [he rules](#)
- [rule, ruler, ruling, overrules](#)

ULT

¹⁰ You have been filled in him, who is the [head](#) over every [power](#) and [authority](#).

UST

¹⁰ Now God has given you everything you need because he has joined you to the Messiah, and [he rules](#) over every other person, spirit, and [angel](#).

Colossians 2:11

In him you were also circumcised (ULT)

Paul is speaking of those who belong to Christ as if they were inside Christ's body. This can also be made active. Alternate translation: "When you joined the church in baptism, God circumcised you" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

with a circumcision not done by humans (ULT)

With this metaphor, Paul says that God has made Christian believers acceptable to himself in a way that reminded him of circumcision, the ceremony through which Hebrew male babies were added to the community of Israel. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of flesh
- you were...circumcised with a circumcision
- circumcision (2)
- body
- of Christ

Translation Words - UST

- a piece of human...flesh
- God has...circumcised
- circumcision (2)
- body
- Messiah

ULT

¹¹ In him [you were](#) also [circumcised with a circumcision](#) not done by humans in the removal of the [body of flesh](#), but in the [circumcision of Christ](#).

UST

¹¹ It is as if [God has](#) also [circumcised](#) you. But this was not as though [a piece of human](#) being cut [flesh](#) from your [body](#). Instead, Jesus took away the power of sin that was within you, and this "[circumcision](#)" is the one that the [Messiah](#) does when he conquered your sinful nature and took it away from you.

Colossians 2:12

**You were buried with him in baptism (ULT)
they have baptized you, God considers that when men
buried the Messiah, they buried you along with him
(UST)**

Paul speaks of being baptized and joining the assembly of believers as if it were being buried with Christ. This can be made active.

Alternate translation: "God buried you with Christ when you joined the church in baptism" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

in him...you were raised up (ULT)

With this metaphor, Paul speaks of the new spiritual life of believers that God made possible by making Christ come alive again. This can be made active. Alternate translation: "because you have joined yourself to Christ, God raised you up" or "in him God caused you to live again" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**you were raised up (ULT)
he made you come alive (UST)**

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God raised you up" or "God caused you to live again" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [baptism](#)
- [of God](#)
- [faith](#)
- [You were buried](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [you were raised up](#)
- [raised](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they have baptized you](#)
- [he](#)
- [you trusted](#)
- [they buried you along with](#)
- [come alive again](#)
- [he made you come alive](#)
- [made](#)

ULT

¹² [You were buried](#) with him in [baptism](#), and in him [you were raised up](#) through [faith](#) in the power [of God](#), who [raised](#) him from [the dead](#).

UST

¹² Because [they have baptized you](#), God considers that when men buried the Messiah, [they buried you along with](#) him. He considers that when [he made](#) the Messiah [come alive again](#), [he made you come alive](#) also, because [you trusted](#) that he could make you live again.

Colossians 2:13

you were dead (ULT)

God viewed you as being dead (UST)

Paul speaks of unresponsiveness to God as if it were death. Alternate translation: "When you Colossian believers were unable to respond to God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

you were dead...he made you alive together (ULT)

God viewed you as being dead...he made you come alive together (UST)

With this metaphor Paul speaks of coming into new spiritual life as if it were coming back to life physically. (See: [Metaphor](#))

dead...When...in your trespasses...in the uncircumcision of your flesh (ULT)

You were dead on two accounts: 1) you were spiritually dead, living a life of sin against Christ and 2) you were not circumcised according to the law of Moses.

and forgave us all of our trespasses (ULT)

he forgave us of all our sins (UST)

"he forgave us, both us Jews and you Gentiles, of all our trespasses"

Translation Words - ULT

- [trespasses](#)
- [trespasses](#)
- [of...flesh](#)
- [uncircumcision](#)
- [dead](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you were sinning against him](#)
- [sins](#)
- [were not Jews](#)
- [were not Jews](#)
- [God viewed you as being dead](#)

ULT

¹³ When you were [dead](#) in your [trespasses](#) and in the [uncircumcision](#) of your [flesh](#), he made you alive together with him and forgave us all of our [trespasses](#). ^[1]

UST

¹³ [God viewed you as being dead](#), because [you were sinning against him](#), and because you [were not Jews](#), so you did not worship him. But he made you come alive together with the Messiah; he forgave us of all our [sins](#).

Colossians 2:14

He canceled the written record of the decrees that were against us, which were opposed to us (ULT) he tears up the papers they signed when he loaned them the money...all our sins (UST)

Paul speaks of the way God forgives our sins as if it were the way a person, to whom many people owe money or goods, destroys the record of that debt so they do not have to pay him back. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [cross](#)
- [decrees](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [cross](#)
- [he tears up the papers they signed when he loaned them the money](#)

ULT

¹⁴ He canceled the written record of the [decrees](#) that were against us, which were opposed to us. He took it away by nailing it to the [cross](#).

UST

¹⁴ We have all sinned so much, but God has forgiven our sins. It is like a man might forgive people who owe him money, so [he tears up the papers they signed when he loaned them the money](#). But as for God, it is as if he had nailed those papers on which he had written all our sins and all the laws that we had broken to the [cross](#) on which the Messiah died.

Colossians 2:15

and made a public spectacle of them (ULT)
he had paraded them around in the streets (UST)

In Roman times, it was common practice for the Roman armies to have a victory parade when they returned home, displaying all the prisoners they had captured and goods they had obtained. God was victorious over the evil powers and authorities. (See: [Metaphor](#))

by the cross (ULT)

Here “the cross” stands for Christ’s death on the cross. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [authorities](#)
- [powers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the evil spirit beings](#)
- [the evil spirit beings](#)

ULT

¹⁵ He disarmed the [powers](#) and [authorities](#) and made a public spectacle of them, by being victorious over them by the cross.

UST

¹⁵ Moreover, God defeated [the evil spirit beings](#) who rule people in this world, and he let everybody know that he had defeated them. It was just as if he had paraded them around in the streets as prisoners.

Colossians 2:16

in eating or in drinking

The law of Moses included what one can eat and drink. “for what you eat or what you drink”

about a feast day or a new moon, or about Sabbath days

The law of Moses specified the days to celebrate, to worship, and to offer sacrifice. “for the way you celebrate feast days or new moons or the Sabbath”

Translation Words - ULT

- let...judge
- Sabbath days
- a new moon
- a feast day

Translation Words - UST

- says that God will punish
- weekly Sabbaths
- the new moon
- special yearly festivals

ULT

16 So then, let no one [judge](#) you in eating or in drinking, or about [a feast day](#) or [a new moon](#), or about [Sabbath days](#).

UST

16 So disregard anyone who [says that God will punish](#) you because you eat certain foods and drink certain drinks or because you do not celebrate [special yearly festivals](#) or when [the new moon](#) appears or [weekly Sabbaths](#).

Colossians 2:17

These are a shadow of the things to come, but the body is Christ (ULT)

A shadow shows the shape of an object, but it is not the object itself. In a similar way, the festivals, celebrations, and Sabbath show us something about how God would save people, but those things do not save people. The savior is Christ. Alternate translation: “These are like a shadow of what would happen, but the reality is Christ” or “These are like a shadow of the savior who would come, but the savior is Christ” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [body](#)
- [is Christ](#)
- [a shadow](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [body](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [shadow, overshadow, shade](#)

ULT

¹⁷ These are [a shadow](#) of the things to come, but the [body is Christ](#).

UST

¹⁷ These kinds of rules and events only picture what is truly coming. What is truly coming is the [Messiah](#) himself.

Colossians 2:18

Let no one...judge you out of your prize (ULT)

Here Paul refers to false teachers as if they were corrupt judges at an athletic contest who would unjustly disqualify the believers from winning the prizes they deserve, and he speaks of Christ saving a person as if Christ were giving a prize to the winner of such a contest. Alternate translation: "Let no one...disqualify you from winning a prize" (See: [Metaphor](#))

who wants...humility (ULT)

pretend to be humble...pretend to be humble (UST)

The word "humility" is a metonym for actions one does to make others think that one is humble. Alternate translation: "who wants you to do things to show that you are humble" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Such a person enters into the things he has seen (ULT) are always talking about visions they say God has made them see (UST)

Here Paul speaks about people who claim to have dreams and visions from God and who talk proudly about them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

and becomes puffed up...by his fleshly thinking (ULT)

Here Paul says that sinful ways of thinking make a person arrogant. Alternate translation: "puffs himself up by means of his fleshly thinking" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

and becomes puffed up (ULT)

They boast (UST)

Here a person who boasts is spoken of as if he were an object into which someone had blown air to make it larger than it should be. (See: [Metaphor](#))

his fleshly thinking (ULT)

Here the idea of flesh stands for the sinful human nature. "the sinful thoughts he naturally thinks" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of angels](#)
- [fleshly](#)
- [humility](#)
- [the worship](#)
- [without cause](#)
- [thinking](#)
- [and becomes puffed up](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [angels](#)

ULT

¹⁸ Let no one who wants [humility](#) and [the worship of angels](#) judge you out of your prize. Such a person enters into the things he has seen [and becomes puffed up without cause](#) by his [fleshly thinking](#).

UST

¹⁸ Those same people [pretend to be humble](#), and they love [to worship angels](#). Do not let them convince you to do the same. If you do, you will lose what the Messiah has promised you. These people are always talking about visions they say God has made them see. [They boast](#) about these things because [they think like people everywhere think](#) who do not honor God.

- they think like people everywhere think
- pretend to be humble
- to worship
- vain, vanity
- they think like people everywhere think
- They boast

Colossians 2:19

**He...does not...hold on to the head (ULT)
not joined to the Messiah. The Messiah is the head
(UST)**

A person not trusting in Christ is spoken of as if they do not hold firmly to the head. Christ is spoken of as if he were the head of a body. Alternate translation: "He does not firmly grasp Christ, who is like the head of a body" or "He does not cling to Christ, who is like the head of a body" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**It is from the head that the whole body throughout its
joints and ligaments is supplied and held together
(ULT)**

Paul speaks of the church, which is ruled and empowered by Christ, as if it were a human body. Alternate translation: "It is from the head that God supplies the whole body throughout its joints and ligaments and holds it together" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [given by God](#)
- [the...body](#)
- [head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [it is God who makes it grow](#)
- [body](#)
- [head](#)

ULT

¹⁹ He does not hold on to the [head](#). It is from the head that the whole [body](#) throughout its joints and ligaments is supplied and held together; it grows with the growth [given by God](#).

UST

¹⁹ Such persons are not joined to the Messiah. The Messiah is the [head](#) of the body, and that body is all those who believe in him. The whole [body](#) depends upon the head. The head takes care of each part and puts together all the bones and ligaments so they work together, and [it is God who makes it grow](#).

Colossians 2:20

If you died together with Christ to the elements of the world (ULT)

With this metaphor, Paul speaks of a believer as a person who is spiritually united with Christ: as Christ died, so the believer has spiritually died; as Christ has come back to life, so the believer has come back to spiritual life, that is, to responsiveness to God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

do you live as obligated to the world (ULT)

“think you must obey the desires of the world”

of the world (ULT) that people make (UST)

the thoughts, desires, and assumptions of the sinful majority of the world’s people (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [do you live](#)
- [world](#)
- [the world](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [you died](#)
- [as](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [are you still living](#)
- [that people make](#)
- [world, worldly](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [you died](#)
- [as if](#)

ULT

²⁰ If [you died](#) together with [Christ](#) to the elements of the [world](#), why [do you live as](#) obligated to [the world](#):

UST

²⁰ God considers that [you died](#) with [the Messiah](#) when he died. So now the spirits and all the rules [that people make](#) for how to please God—none of these things rule you anymore. So why [are you still living as if](#) these things were real? Why do you still obey those things?

Colossians 2:21

Connecting Statement:

The rhetorical question that begins with the words “why do you live as obligated to the world” in verse 20 ends here.

“Do not handle, nor taste, nor touch”?

Paul is quoting what other people have been telling the Colossians. “why do you believe them when they say, ‘Do not handle, nor taste, nor touch?’” or “you should not obey them when they say, ‘Do not handle, nor taste, nor touch’”

ULT

²¹ “Do not handle, nor taste, nor touch!”

UST

²¹ These rules are such as: “Do not handle certain things. Do not taste certain things. Do not touch certain things.” Do not think you still have to obey such regulations.

Colossians 2:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [teachings](#)
- [perishing](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [taught](#)
- [things that perish](#)

ULT

²² which are all [perishing](#) with use, according to the instructions and [teachings](#) of men?

UST

²² These rules are all about [things that perish](#) in this world as people use them, and they were made up and [taught](#) by men, not by God.

Colossians 2:23

These are rules which have the wisdom of self-made religion and humility and severity of the body (ULT)

“These rules seem wise to unbelieving people because they allow those who follow them to appear humble because they hurt their own bodies”

of...But they are not...any value against the indulgence of the flesh (ULT)

“do not help you stop following your human desires”

Translation Words - ULT

- flesh
- value
- humility
- of the body
- the wisdom

Translation Words - UST

- wanting to sin
- really stop
- look so humble
- own bodies
- wise, wisdom

ULT

²³ These are rules which have [the wisdom](#) of self-made religion and [humility](#) and severity [of the body](#). But they are not of any [value](#) against the indulgence of the [flesh](#).

2:13 ^[1] Some older versions read, *and forgave you all of your trespasses* .

UST

²³ These rules may seem to be good. But people made them because they were trying to honor God in their own way. That is why those people often [look so humble](#); that is why they often hurt their [own bodies](#). But if we obey these rules, we do not [really stop wanting to sin](#).

Colossians 3

Colossians 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The second part of this chapter parallels Ephesians 5 and 6.

Special concepts in this chapter

Old and new self

The old and new self mean the same as the old and new man. The term “old man” probably refers to the sinful nature with which a person is born. The “new man” is the new nature or new life that God gives a person after they come to believe in Christ. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [faith](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Character

Many of the things Paul encourages his readers to pursue or avoid are not actions but character qualities. Because of this, they may be difficult to translate. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

“The things above”

Where God dwells is often pictured as being located “above.” Paul says to “seek the things above” and to “think about the things above.” He is implying Christians should seek and think about heavenly and godly things.

Colossians 3:1

Connecting Statement:

Paul warns the believers that because they are one with Christ, they ought not do certain things.

If then (ULT)

This is an idiom that means “because.” (See: [Idiom](#))

God has raised you with Christ (ULT) he made you alive again when he made the Messiah alive (UST)

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Possible meanings are 1) because God has caused Christ to come alive again, God has already given the believers in Colossae new spiritual life. Alternate translation: “God has given you new life because you belong to Christ” or 2) because God has caused Christ to come alive again, the believers in Colossae can know that after they die they will live with Christ, and Paul can speak of the believers living again as if it has already happened. Alternate translation: “you can be sure that God will give you life as he has caused Christ to come alive again” (See: [Predictive Past](#) and [Idiom](#))

the things above (ULT)

“things in heaven”

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- the right hand
- Christ
- Christ
- God has raised you with
- seek

Translation Words - UST

- God's
- right side
- when he made the Messiah alive
- Messiah
- he made you alive again
- try to live

ULT

¹ If then [God has raised you with Christ](#), [seek](#) the things above, where [Christ](#) is sitting at [the right hand of God](#).

UST

¹ God considers that [he made you alive again when he made the Messiah alive](#) after he died. And the [Messiah](#) is in heaven and is sitting at [God's right side](#), the place for the person of greatest honor and power. You also should [try to live](#) here as if you were already there.

Colossians 3:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Think](#)
- [earth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Desire](#)
- [earth](#)

ULT

² [Think](#) about the things above, not about the things on [earth](#).

UST

² [Desire](#) what Jesus is keeping in heaven to give you; do not desire the things here on [earth](#).

Colossians 3:3

For you have died (ULT)

For...you have died (UST)

As Christ actually died, so God counts the Colossian believers as having died with Christ. (See: [Metaphor](#))

your life is hidden with Christ in God (ULT)

Paul speaks of people's lives as if they were objects that can be hidden in containers and speaks of God as if he were a container. Alternate translation: Possible meanings are 1) "it is as though God has taken your life and concealed it with Christ in God's presence" or 2) "only God knows what your true life really is, and he will reveal it when he reveals Christ" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#)
- [God](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [you have died](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [God](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [you have died](#)

ULT

³ For [you have died](#), and your [life](#) is hidden with [Christ](#) in [God](#).

UST

³ For [God](#) considers that [you have died](#) and no longer belong to this world. He considers that he has hidden you with the [Messiah](#) to keep you safe.

Colossians 3:4

who is your life (ULT)

Christ is the one who gives spiritual life to the believer. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [appears](#)
- [will...appear](#)
- [who is...life](#)
- [glory](#)
- [Christ](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God reveals](#)
- [he will also reveal](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [that same light](#)
- [Messiah](#)

ULT

⁴ When [Christ appears](#), [who is](#) your [life](#), then you will also [appear](#) with him in [glory](#). ^[1]

UST

⁴ When [God reveals](#) the [Messiah](#) to everyone on earth in his shining light, then [he will also reveal](#) you in [that same light](#), because the Messiah makes you live!

Colossians 3:5

uncleanness (ULT)

impure acts (UST)

impure behavior

passion (ULT)

lustful (UST)

strong, lustful desire

greed, which is idolatry (ULT)

“greed, which is the same thing as idolatry” or “do not be greedy because that is the same as worshiping idols”

Translation Words - ULT

- idolatry
- evil
- desire
- Put to death
- members
- greed
- earth
- sexual immorality

Translation Words - UST

- worshiping idols
- evil ways
- lust, lustful, passions, desires
- You must execute
- member, body parts
- greedy
- world
- sexually immoral

ULT

⁵ [Put to death](#), then, the [members](#) that are on [earth](#)—[sexual immorality](#), uncleanness, passion, [evil desire](#), and [greed](#), which is [idolatry](#).

UST

⁵ Therefore, think of the desires you have to do evil things in this [world](#) as enemies that must die. [You must execute](#) them: Do not try to do [sexually immoral](#) or impure acts. Do not think in lustful or [evil ways](#). And do not be [greedy](#), because that is the same as [worshiping idols](#).

Colossians 3:6

the wrath of God (ULT)

God is angry (UST)

God's anger against those who do evil as shown by what he does to punish them.

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- wrath

Translation Words - UST

- God is angry
- God is angry

ULT

⁶ It is for these things that the [wrath of God](#) is coming. ^[2]

UST

⁶ It is because people do things like these that [God is angry](#) with them and will punish them, for they do not obey him.

Colossians 3:7

It is in these things that you also...walked (ULT)

Paul speaks of the way a person behaves as if it were a road or path a person walks on. Alternate translation: "These are the things you used to do" (See: [Metaphor](#))

when you lived in them (ULT)

when you were participating with those who behaved like that (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) "when you practiced these things" or 2) "when you lived among the people who disobey God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you lived](#)
- [walked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you were participating](#)
- [You...lived](#)

ULT

⁷ It is in these things that you also once [walked](#) when [you lived](#) in them.

UST

⁷ You yourselves also formerly [lived](#) like that when [you were participating](#) with those who behaved like that.

Colossians 3:8

evil intentions (ULT)

try to make trouble (UST)

“desire to do wicked deeds”

insults (ULT)

insult each other (UST)

speech used to hurt others

and obscene speech (ULT)

talk in shameful, disgusting ways (UST)

words that do not belong in polite conversation

from your mouth (ULT)

Here “mouth” is a metonym for talk. “in your talk” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [wrath](#)
- [anger](#)
- [evil intentions](#)
- [insults](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [be angry](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [try to make trouble](#)
- [insult each other](#)

ULT

⁸ But now you must also get rid of all these things—[wrath](#), [anger](#), [evil intentions](#), [insults](#), and obscene speech from your mouth.

UST

⁸ But now you must stop doing these things. Do not [be angry](#) at each other; do not [try to make trouble](#) for each other. Do not [insult each other](#) or talk in shameful, disgusting ways.

Colossians 3:9

Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to tell the believers how to live and reminds them that Christians should treat everyone according to the same standard.

since you have taken off the old man with its practices (ULT)

Here Paul is speaking of a Christian's rejecting his old sinful life as if it were an old garment that he takes off in order to put on a new garment. It was very common for Israelites such as Paul to speak of moral qualities as if they were pieces of clothing. (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

⁹ Do not lie to one another, since you have taken off the old man with its practices,

UST

⁹ And do not lie to one another. Do not do any of these things, because you have become a new person now, a person who does not do these evil things any more.

Colossians 3:10

and you have put on the new man (ULT)

Here Paul is speaking of a Christian's rejecting his old sinful life as if it were an old garment that he takes off (verse 9) in order to put on a new garment. It was very common for Israelites such as Paul to speak of moral qualities as if they were pieces of clothing. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the image (ULT)

This refers to Jesus Christ. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [one who created](#)
- [the image](#)
- [you have put on](#)
- [knowledge](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he created](#)
- [image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue](#)
- [You are](#)
- [God is always making you to know him better](#)

ULT

¹⁰ and [you have put on](#) the new man that is being made new in [knowledge](#) according to [the image](#) of the [one who created](#) it.

UST

¹⁰ [You are](#) a new person, and [God is always making you to know him better](#) and better and to be like him, as [he created](#) you to be.

Colossians 3:11

there is no Greek and Jew, circumcision and uncircumcision, barbarian, Scythian, slave, freeman (ULT)

These terms are examples of the categories of people that Paul says do not matter for God. God sees every person alike, not by race, religion, nationality, or social status. Alternate translation: "race, religion, culture, and social status do not matter" (See: [Metonymy](#))

barbarian (ULT)
a foreigner (UST)

a foreigner who does not know local customs

Scythian (ULT)
uncivilized (UST)

This is someone from the land of Scythia, which was outside the Roman Empire. Greeks and Romans used this word for someone who grew up in a place where everyone did wicked things all the time.

but Christ is all, and is in all (ULT)

Nothing is excluded or left out of the rule of Christ. Alternate translation: "Christ is all important and lives in all his people" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jew](#)
- [circumcision](#)
- [uncircumcision](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Greek](#)
- [slave](#)
- [freeman](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a Jew](#)
- [is circumcised](#)
- [is not circumcised](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [a non-Jew](#)
- [a slave](#)
- [not a slave](#)

ULT

¹¹ This is where there is no [Greek](#) and [Jew](#), [circumcision](#) and [uncircumcision](#), barbarian, Scythian, [slave](#), [freeman](#), but [Christ](#) is all, and is in all.

UST

¹¹ God has made us into new persons joined to the Messiah, and he is always making us new. So it is no longer important whether anyone is [a non-Jew](#) or [a Jew](#), or whether anyone [is circumcised](#) or [is not circumcised](#), or whether anyone is a foreigner, or even uncivilized, or whether anyone is [a slave](#) or [not a slave](#). But instead what is important is [the Messiah](#), who is all things in all of you.

Colossians 3:12

as God's chosen ones, holy and beloved (ULT)

This can be made active. Alternate translation: "as those whom God has chosen for himself, whom he desires to see live for him alone, and whom he loves" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

put on...inward parts of mercy, kindness, humility, gentleness, and patience (ULT)

The "heart" is a metaphor for feelings and attitudes. Here it is spoken of as if it has certain feelings and attitudes, and as if it were clothing to wear. Alternate translation: "have a merciful, kind, humble, gentle, and patient heart" or "be merciful, kind, humble, gentle, and patient" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of mercy
- inward parts of mercy
- beloved
- holy
- God's
- inward parts
- humility
- chosen ones
- kindness
- as
- gentleness
- and patience
- put on

Translation Words - UST

- serve others compassionately and mercifully
- serve others compassionately and mercifully
- he loves you
- set you apart
- God
- serve others compassionately and mercifully
- Humbly
- has chosen you
- kindness
- like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if
- gently
- patience
- clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

ULT

¹² Therefore, [as God's chosen ones](#), [holy](#) and [beloved](#), [put on inward parts of mercy](#), [kindness](#), [humility](#), [gentleness](#), and [patience](#).

UST

¹² Because [God has chosen you](#) and [set you apart](#) as his people, and because [he loves you](#), [serve others compassionately and mercifully](#) and with [kindness](#). [Humbly](#) and [gently](#) care for one another with [patience](#)

Colossians 3:13

Bear with one another (ULT)

bear with each other (UST)

“Be patient with one another” or “Accept each other even when you disappoint each other”

be gracious to each other (ULT)

forgive one another (UST)

“Treat each other better than they deserve for you to treat them”

against...has a complaint (ULT)

against...complains (UST)

The abstract noun “complaint” can be stated as “complain.” Alternate translation: “has a reason to complain against” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- be gracious
- has forgiven
- in the same way
- Bear

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- forgive
- has forgiven
- Just as
- bear with

ULT

¹³ [Bear](#) with one another and [be gracious](#) to each other. If someone has a complaint against someone else, [in the same way](#) that the [Lord has forgiven](#) you, so also you should forgive them.

UST

¹³ and [bear with](#) each other. If anyone complains against someone else, [forgive](#) one another. [Just as](#) the [Lord](#) Jesus [has forgiven](#) you, so also you must forgive each other.

Colossians 3:14

have love, which is the bond of perfection (ULT)

Here “bond of perfection” is a metaphor for something that causes perfect unity among people. Alternate translation: “love one another because it will unite you perfectly together. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the bond](#)
- [have love](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you will tie yourselves together](#)
- [to love](#)

ULT

¹⁴ But above all these things, [have love](#), which is [the bond](#) of perfection.

UST

¹⁴ And what is most important is [to love](#) one another, because by doing that [you will tie yourselves together](#) perfectly.

Colossians 3:15

Let...the...peace of Christ rule in your hearts (ULT)

Paul speaks of the peace that Christ gives as if it were a ruler. Possible meanings are 1) "Do everything so that you can have peaceful relationships with each other" or 2) "Allow God to give you peace in your heart" (See: [Metonymy](#))

in your hearts (ULT)

Here "hearts" is a metonym for a people's minds or inner being. Alternate translation: "in your minds" or "inside of you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you...were called](#)
- [hearts](#)
- [body](#)
- [of Christ](#)
- [Let...rule](#)
- [peace](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he has called you](#)
- [heart](#)
- [to be together](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [rule, ruler, ruling, overrules](#)
- [to live in peace](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Let the [peace of Christ rule](#) in your [hearts](#). It was for this peace that you also [were called](#) in one [body](#). Also be thankful.

UST

¹⁵ The [Messiah](#) is the one who makes you [to live in peace](#) with God and one another, so always behave so as to remain at peace. This is why [he has called you to be together](#). And always thank God for everything.

Colossians 3:16

Let the word of Christ live in you (ULT)

Paul speaks of Christ's word as if it were a person capable of living inside other people. "Word of Christ" here is a metonym for the teachings of Christ. Alternate translation: "Be obedient to the instructions of Christ" or "Always trust Christ's promises" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

admonish one another (ULT) instruct each other (UST)

"caution and encourage one another"

with psalms and hymns and spiritual songs (ULT) sing psalms, hymns, and songs that honor him (UST)

"with all sorts of songs to praise God"

Sing with thankfulness in your hearts (ULT)

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's minds or inner being. Alternate translation: "Sing with thankfulness in your minds" or "Sing and be thankful" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [thankfulness](#)
- [to God](#)
- [hearts](#)
- [word of Christ](#)
- [wisdom](#)
- [with psalms](#)
- [and spiritual](#)
- [of Christ](#)
- [teach](#)
- [admonish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [thank](#)
- [God](#)
- [sincerely](#)
- [what the Messiah has taught you](#)
- [wisdom](#)
- [sing psalms](#)
- [that honor him](#)
- [what the Messiah has taught you](#)
- [Teach](#)
- [instruct](#)

ULT

16 Let the [word of Christ](#) live in you richly. With all [wisdom](#) [teach](#) and [admonish](#) one another [with psalms](#) and hymns [and spiritual](#) songs. Sing with [thankfulness](#) in your [hearts to God](#).

UST

16 As you live and serve God, always obey together [what the Messiah has taught you](#). [Teach](#) and [instruct](#) each other with [wisdom](#); praise and [thank God sincerely](#) as you [sing psalms](#), hymns, and songs [that honor him](#).

Colossians 3:17

in word or in deed

“in speaking or in acting”

in the name of the Lord Jesus (ULT) to honor the Lord Jesus (UST)

Acting in the name of a person here is a metonym for acting to help other people think well of that person. Alternate translation: “to honor the Lord Jesus” or “so that others will know you belong to the Lord Jesus and think well of him” or “as if the Lord Jesus himself were doing it” (See: [Metonymy](#))

through him (ULT)

Possible meanings are 1) because he has done great deeds or 2) because he has made it possible for people to speak to God and so give him thanks. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [of the Lord](#)
- [to God](#)
- [deed](#)
- [to God...the Father](#)
- [the name](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [to God](#)
- [you do](#)
- [God the Father, heavenly Father, Father](#)
- [to honor](#)

ULT

17 Everything that you might do, in word or in [deed](#), do all in [the name of the Lord Jesus](#). Give thanks [to God the Father](#) through him.

UST

17 Whatever you say, and whatever [you do](#), do it all [to honor the Lord Jesus](#), and do it while you give thanks [to God](#) for what the Messiah has done for you.

Colossians 3:18

Connecting Statement:

Paul then gives some special instructions to wives, husbands, children, fathers, slaves, and masters.

Wives, submit to your (ULT)

Wives, obey your (UST)

“Wives, obey”

it is appropriate (ULT)

this is right (UST)

“it is proper” or “it is right”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [in the Lord](#)
- [submit](#)
- [as](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [according to what the Lord...has commanded](#)
- [according to what the Lord Jesus has commanded](#)
- [obey](#)
- [like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if](#)

ULT

¹⁸ Wives, [submit](#) to your husbands, [as](#) it is appropriate [in the Lord](#).

UST

¹⁸ Wives, [obey](#) your husbands; this is right and [according to what the Lord Jesus has commanded](#).

Colossians 3:19

do not be bitter against (ULT)

do not be harsh with (UST)

“do not be harsh with” or “do not be angry toward”

Translation Words - ULT

- [love](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [love](#)

ULT

¹⁹ Husbands, [love](#) your wives, and do not be bitter against them.

UST

¹⁹ Husbands, [love](#) your wives and do not be harsh with them.

Colossians 3:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Lord
- Children
- in the Lord
- obey

Translation Words - UST

- the Lord
- Children
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- obey

ULT

²⁰ [Children](#), [obey](#) your parents in all things, for this is pleasing [in the Lord](#).

UST

²⁰ [Children](#), [obey](#) your parents in every way, because [the Lord](#) God is pleased when you do that.

Colossians 3:21

do not provoke your children (ULT)

do not cause anger in your children (UST)

“do not needlessly make your children angry”

Translation Words - ULT

- [children](#)
- [Fathers](#)
- [provoke](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in...children](#)
- [Fathers](#)
- [do...cause anger](#)

ULT

²¹ [Fathers](#), do not [provoke](#) your [children](#), so that they will not be discouraged.

UST

²¹ [Fathers](#), do not [cause anger](#) in your [children](#), so they do not become discouraged.

Colossians 3:22

obey...your masters...the flesh in (ULT)

obey...your masters...this world in (UST)

“obey your human masters”

all things...not with eyeservice as people pleasers (ULT)

“things. Do not obey only when your master is watching, as though you need only to please people”

with a sincere heart (ULT)

sincerely from the heart (UST)

“Heart” here is a metonym for a person’s thoughts or intentions.
Alternate translation: “with all honest intentions” or “with sincerity”
(See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Fear](#)
- [masters](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [the flesh](#)
- [a...heart](#)
- [obey](#)
- [as](#)
- [Slaves](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you honor](#)
- [masters](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [this world](#)
- [from the heart](#)
- [obey](#)
- [like](#)
- [Slaves](#)

ULT

²² [Slaves](#), [obey](#) your [masters](#) according to [the flesh](#) in all things, not with eyeservice [as](#) people pleasers, but with a sincere [heart](#). [Fear](#) the [Lord](#).

UST

²² [Slaves](#), [obey](#) your [masters](#) in [this world](#) in every way. Do not obey your masters only when they are watching you, [like](#) those who merely want their masters to think they always obey. Instead, obey your masters sincerely [from the heart](#) because [you honor](#) the [Lord](#) Jesus.

Colossians 3:23

as to the Lord (ULT)

for the Lord (UST)

“as you would work for the Lord”

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- the soul
- work
- as

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- wholeheartedly
- work
- for

ULT

²³ Whatever you do, [work](#) from [the soul](#) [as](#) to the [Lord](#) and not as to people.

UST

²³ Whatever work you do, [work wholeheartedly for](#) the [Lord](#) Jesus rather than for people. Do not work like those who are working merely for their human masters,

Colossians 3:24

the reward of the inheritance (ULT)

your share of what the Lord has promised you (UST)

“the inheritance as your reward”

inheritance (ULT)

of what the Lord has promised you (UST)

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Christ](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [inheritance](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [you will receive](#)
- [whom you serve](#)
- [You know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Messiah](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [of what the Lord has promised you](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [you will receive](#)
- [you are serving](#)
- [you know](#)

ULT

²⁴ [You know](#) that [you will receive](#) from [the Lord](#) the reward of the [inheritance](#). It is the [Lord Christ whom you serve](#).

UST

²⁴ because [you know the Lord](#) will repay you; [you will receive](#) your share [of what the Lord has promised you](#). Jesus the [Messiah](#) is the real master whom [you are serving](#).

Colossians 3:25

anyone...who does unrighteousness will receive the penalty for the unrighteousness that he did (ULT)

The phrase “receive the penalty” means to be punished. Alternate translation: “anyone who does unrighteousness will be punished” or “God will punish anyone who does what is unrighteous”

who does unrighteousness (ULT) do wrong (UST)

who actively does wrong of any kind

there is no favoritism (ULT) in the same way (UST)

The abstract noun “favoritism” can be expressed with the verb “favor.” To favor some people is to judge them by different standards so the result is better for them than for others who do the same actions. Alternate translation: “God does not favor anyone” or “God judges everyone by the same standard” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- will receive
- favoritism
- who does unrighteousness
- for the unrighteousness that he did

Translation Words - UST

- God will judge
- in the same way
- do wrong
- wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

ULT

²⁵ For anyone [who does unrighteousness will receive](#) the penalty [for the unrighteousness that he did](#), and there is no [favoritism](#).

3:4 ^[1] Some versions read, *When Christ appears, who is our life, then you will also appear with him in glory* .

3:6 ^[2] Some ancient copies add, *on the sons of disobedience* .

UST

²⁵ But [God will judge](#) each person [in the same way](#); he will punish those who [do wrong](#) as they deserve.

Colossians 4

Colossians 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Colossians 4:1 appears to belong with the topics of Chapter 3 instead of Chapter 4.

Special concepts in this chapter

“In my own hand”

It was common in the ancient Near East for the author to speak and someone else to write down the words. Many of the New Testament letters were written this way. Paul wrote the final greeting himself.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Secret truth

Paul refers to a “secret truth” in this chapter. The role of the church in the plans of God was once unknown. But God has now revealed it. Part of this involves the Gentiles having equal standing with the Jews in the plans of God. (See: [reveal](#), [revealed](#), [revelation](#))

Colossians 4:1

Connecting Statement:

After speaking to masters, Paul ends his special instructions to the different kinds of believers in the church at Colossae.

what is right and fair (ULT)

These words mean almost the same thing and are used to emphasize the things that are morally correct. (See: [Doublet](#))

and...you...have a master in heaven (ULT)

God wants the relationship between an earthly master and his slave to be loving the way God, the heavenly master, loves his earthly servants, including the earthly slaves' masters.

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [what is right](#)
- [Masters](#)
- [a master](#)
- [to slaves](#)
- [You know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [justly](#)
- [Masters](#)
- [a master](#)
- [slaves](#)
- [you know](#)

ULT

¹ [Masters](#), give [to slaves](#) [what is right](#) and fair. [You know](#) that you also have [a master](#) in [heaven](#).

UST

¹ [Masters](#), treat your [slaves justly](#) and fairly supply what they need, because [you know](#) that you also have [a master](#) who is in [heaven](#).

Colossians 4:2

General Information:

Here the word “us” refers to Paul and Timothy but not the Colossians. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to give instructions to believers on how to live and speak.

Continue steadfastly in prayer (ULT)

Keep praying without stopping (UST)

“Keep praying faithfully” or “Keep praying consistently”

Translation Words - ULT

- [in prayer](#)
- [Stay alert](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Keep praying](#)
- [keep praying](#)

ULT

² Continue steadfastly [in prayer](#). [Stay alert](#) in it in thanksgiving.

UST

² [Keep praying](#) without stopping. Do not be lazy, but instead [keep praying](#) and thanking God.

Colossians 4:3

God would open...a door (ULT)

God will make it possible for us...will make it possible for us (UST)

Opening a door for someone is a metaphor for giving that person the opportunity to do something. Alternate translation: "God would provide opportunities" (See: [Metaphor](#))

would open...a door...for the word (ULT)

will make it possible for us...will make it possible for us...the good news (UST)

"make an opportunity for us to preach his message"

for the...the secret truth...of Christ (ULT)

the...the secret...Messiah (UST)

This refers to the gospel of Jesus Christ, which was not understood before Christ came.

Because of this...I am...chained up (ULT)

Here "chained" is a metonym for being in prison. Alternate translation: "It is for proclaiming the message of Jesus Christ that I am now in prison" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I am...chained up](#)
- [God](#)
- [word](#)
- [Pray](#)
- [of Christ](#)
- [secret truth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I am now in prison](#)
- [God](#)
- [good news](#)
- [Pray](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [secret](#)

ULT

³ [Pray](#) together for us also, that [God](#) would open a door to us for the [word](#), to speak the [secret truth of Christ](#). Because of this, [I am](#) also [chained up](#).

UST

³ [Pray](#) together for us too, so that [God](#) will make it possible for us to freely explain the [good news](#), the [secret](#) about the [Messiah](#) that God is now revealing everywhere. It is because we proclaimed this good news that [I am now in prison](#).

Colossians 4:4

Pray that I may make it clear (ULT)

“Pray that I might be able to speak the message of Jesus Christ clearly”

Translation Words - ULT

- [I may make...clear](#)
- [as](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to fully explain](#)
- [like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if](#)

ULT

⁴ Pray that [I may make](#) it [clear](#), [as](#) I ought to speak.

UST

⁴ Pray that I might be able [to fully explain](#) the good news.

Colossians 4:5

Walk in wisdom toward those outside (ULT)

Live wisely around those who are not believers (UST)

The idea of walking is often used for the idea of conducting one's life.
Alternate translation: "Live in such a way that those who are not believers will see that you are wise" (See: [Metaphor](#))

and redeem the time (ULT)

make each moment valuable (UST)

To "redeem" something means to restore it to its rightful owner.
Here time is spoken of as something that can be restored and used to serve God. Alternate translation: "do the best things you can with your time" or "put the time to its best use" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

⁵ [Walk](#) in [wisdom](#) toward those outside, [and redeem](#) the [time](#).

UST

⁵ [Live wisely](#) around those who are not believers, and [make each moment valuable](#) by using it wisely.

Translation Words - ULT

- [wisdom](#)
- [and redeem](#)
- [time](#)
- [Walk](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [wisely](#)
- [make each moment valuable](#)
- [make each moment valuable](#)
- [Live](#)

Colossians 4:6

Let your words always be with grace. Let them be seasoned with salt (ULT)

Food with salt is a metaphor for words that teach others and that others enjoy hearing. Alternate translation: "Let your conversation always be gracious and attractive" (See: [Metaphor](#))

so that you may know how you should...answer (ULT)

"so that you may know how to answer questions from anyone about Jesus Christ" or "so that you may be able to treat every person well"

Translation Words - ULT

- [grace](#)
- [so that you may know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [graciously](#)
- [will know](#)

ULT

⁶ Let your words always be with [grace](#). Let them be seasoned with salt, [so that you may know](#) how you should answer each person.

UST

⁶ Always speak [graciously](#) and in a pleasant and interesting way to those who do not believe in the Lord Jesus. Then you [will know](#) how to speak to each person about the Lord.

Colossians 4:7

General Information:

Onesimus was a slave of Philemon in Colossae. He had stolen money from Philemon and run away to Rome where he became a Christian through the ministry of Paul. Now Tychicus and Onesimus are the ones bringing Paul's letter to Colossae.

Connecting Statement:

Paul closes with special instructions about certain people as well as greetings to and from individual believers.

As for...the things concerning me (ULT) that has been happening to me (UST)

"everything that has been happening to me"

a fellow slave (ULT) who serves...together with me (UST)

"fellow servant." Though Paul is a free man, he sees himself as a servant of Christ and sees Tychicus as a fellow servant.

Translation Words - ULT

- the Lord
- brother
- servant
- a faithful
- He is a beloved
- in the Lord
- Tychicus
- will make them known

Translation Words - UST

- the Lord
- a fellow believer
- who helps me
- faithfully
- whom I love
- the Lord
- Tychicus
- will tell

ULT

⁷ As for all the things concerning me, [Tychicus will make them known](#) to you. [He is a beloved brother](#), and [a faithful servant](#), and a fellow slave [in the Lord](#).

UST

⁷ [Tychicus will tell](#) you everything that has been happening to me. He is [a fellow believer whom I love](#), [who helps me faithfully](#), and who serves [the Lord](#) Jesus together with me.

Colossians 4:8

the matters about us (ULT)

These words do not include the Colossians. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

he may encourage your hearts (ULT)

The heart was thought to be the center of many emotions. Alternate translation: “may encourage you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hearts](#)
- [I sent](#)
- [he may encourage](#)
- [you might know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [I am sending](#)
- [he might encourage](#)
- [you might know](#)

ULT

⁸ [I sent](#) him to you for this reason, that [you might know](#) the matters about us, and so that [he may encourage](#) your [hearts](#). ^[1]

UST

⁸ The reason that [I am sending](#) Tychicus to you with this letter is that [you might know](#) about us and that [he might encourage](#) you.

Colossians 4:9

the faithful and beloved brother (ULT)

Paul calls Onesimus a fellow Christian and servant of Christ.

They will tell (ULT)

They will tell (UST)

“Tychicus and Onesimus will tell”

everything...that has happened here (ULT)

all...what has been happening here (UST)

They will tell the Colossian believers all that is taking place where Paul is currently living. Tradition says Paul was in Rome under house arrest or in prison at this time.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- faithful
- beloved
- They will tell

Translation Words - UST

- a...fellow believer
- faithful
- whom I love
- They will tell

ULT

⁹ I sent him together with Onesimus, the [faithful](#) and [beloved brother](#), who is one of you. [They will tell](#) you everything that has happened here.

UST

⁹ I am sending him to you with Onesimus, who is a [faithful fellow believer](#), [whom I love](#) and who is your fellow townsman. [They will tell](#) you all about what has been happening here.

Colossians 4:10

Aristarchus (ULT)

Aristarchus (UST)

He was in prison with Paul in Ephesus when Paul wrote this letter to the Colossians.

if he comes (ULT)

if he comes (UST)

“if Mark comes”

Translation Words - ULT

- of Barnabas
- Mark
- you received
- receive
- fellow prisoner
- orders

Translation Words - UST

- Barnabas
- Mark
- I have instructed you
- welcome
- who is in prison with
- I have instructed you

ULT

¹⁰ Aristarchus, my [fellow prisoner](#), greets you, as well as [Mark](#), the cousin [of Barnabas](#) (about whom [you received orders](#); if he comes to you, [receive](#) him),

UST

¹⁰ Aristarchus, [who is in prison with](#) me, and [Mark](#), who is [Barnabas](#)' cousin, greet you. [I have instructed you](#) about Mark, so if he comes to you, [welcome](#) him.

Colossians 4:11

Jesus who is called Justus (ULT)

Jesus, who is also named Justus (UST)

This is a man who also worked with Paul.

These are my only fellow workers for the kingdom of God who are from the circumcision (ULT)

These three men are the only Jewish believers working with me to proclaim God as king (UST)

Paul uses "circumcision" here to refer to Jews because, under the Old Testament law, all male Jews had to be circumcised. Alternate translation: "These three men are the only Jewish believers working with me to proclaim God as king through Christ Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

These are...only...from the circumcision (ULT)

These...only Jewish (UST)

"These men—Aristarchus, Mark, and Justus—alone of the circumcision"

Translation Words - ULT

- [is called](#)
- [of God](#)
- [the circumcision](#)
- [kingdom of God](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [a comfort](#)
- [my...fellow workers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [named](#)
- [God](#)
- [Jewish](#)
- [God...as king](#)
- [as king](#)
- [encouraged me](#)
- [believers working with me](#)

ULT

¹¹ and also Jesus who [is called](#) Justus. These are my only [fellow workers](#) for the [kingdom of God](#) who are from [the circumcision](#), who have been [a comfort](#) to me.

UST

¹¹ Jesus, who is also [named](#) Justus, greets you, too. These three men are the only [Jewish believers working with me](#) to proclaim [God as king](#) through the Messiah Jesus. They have greatly helped and [encouraged me](#).

Colossians 4:12

General Information:

Laodicea and Hierapolis were towns close to Colossae.

Epaphras (ULT)

Epaphras (UST)

Epaphras was the man who had preached the good news to the people in Colossae ([Colossians 1:7](#)).

He is one of you (ULT)

who is your fellow townsman (UST)

“from your city” or “your fellow townsman”

and a slave of Christ Jesus (ULT)

a servant of the Messiah Jesus (UST)

“a committed disciple of Christ Jesus”

you...He always strives for...in prayer (ULT)

your fellow townsman...He prays earnestly for you very often (UST)

“earnestly prays for you”

you may stand complete and fully assured (ULT)

you might be strong and believe (UST)

“you may stand mature and confident”

Translation Words - ULT

- of Christ Jesus
- of God
- the will of God
- prayer
- of Christ
- complete
- and a slave

Translation Words - UST

- of the Messiah Jesus
- God
- God teaches us and promises us
- He prays earnestly for you
- of the Messiah
- you might be strong
- a servant

ULT

¹² Epaphras greets you. He is one of you [and a slave of Christ](#) Jesus. He always strives for you in [prayer](#), so that you may stand [complete](#) and fully assured in all [the will of God](#).

UST

¹² Epaphras, who is your fellow townsman and [a servant of the Messiah](#) Jesus, greets you. [He prays earnestly for you](#) very often, that [you might be strong](#) and believe everything that [God teaches us and promises us](#).

Colossians 4:13

I bear witness...of him, that he works hard for you (ULT)

“I have observed that he has worked very hard for you”

Translation Words - ULT

- [I bear witness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I can say](#)

ULT

¹³ For [I bear witness](#) of him, that he works hard for you, and for those in Laodicea, and for those in Hierapolis.

UST

¹³ [I can say](#) that he has worked very hard for you, for those who live in the city of Laodicea, and for those who live in the city of Hierapolis.

Colossians 4:14

Demas (ULT)

Demas (UST)

This is another co-worker with Paul.

Translation Words - ULT

- [beloved](#)
- [Luke the...physician](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I love](#)
- [Luke the doctor](#)

ULT

¹⁴ [Luke the beloved physician](#) and
Demas greet you.

UST

¹⁴ [Luke the doctor](#), whom [I love](#), and
Demas greet you.

Colossians 4:15

the...brothers (ULT)

the...fellow believers (UST)

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.

in Laodicea (ULT)

who live in Laodicea (UST)

a city very close to Colossae where there was also a church

and Nympha...the church that is in her house (ULT)

and greet Nympha...the group of believers that meets in her house (UST)

A woman named Nympha hosted a house church. Alternate translation: "Nympha and the group of believers that meets in her house"

Translation Words - ULT

- church
- brothers
- house

Translation Words - UST

- group of believers
- fellow believers
- house

ULT

¹⁵ Greet the [brothers](#) in Laodicea, and Nympha, and the [church](#) that is in her [house](#).

UST

¹⁵ Greet the [fellow believers](#) who live in Laodicea, and greet Nympha and the [group of believers](#) that meets in her [house](#).

Colossians 4:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- church
- letter

Translation Words - UST

- assembly
- letter

ULT

¹⁶ When this [letter](#) has been read among you, make sure that it is read also in the [church](#) of the Laodiceans, and see that you also read the letter from Laodicea.

UST

¹⁶ After someone reads this [letter](#) among you, have someone also read it to the [assembly](#) in Laodicea. And read the letter from Laodicea, too.

Colossians 4:17

Say...to Archippus, "Look to the ministry that you have received in the Lord, that you should fulfill it (ULT)

Paul reminds Archippus of the task God had given him and that he, Archippus, was under obligation to the Lord to fulfill it. The words "Look," "you have received," and "you should fulfill" all refer to Archippus and should be singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [ministry](#)
- [you should fulfill](#)
- [in the Lord](#)
- [you have received](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [the task](#)
- [he completes](#)
- [God](#)
- [gave](#)

ULT

¹⁷ Say to Archippus, "Look to the [ministry](#) that [you have received in the Lord](#), that [you should fulfill](#) it."

UST

¹⁷ Tell Archippus to make sure that [he completes the task](#) that [God gave](#) him to do.

Colossians 4:18

Connecting Statement:

Paul closes his letter with a greeting written in his own handwriting.

Remember my chains (ULT)

Remember me and pray for me in prison (UST)

Paul speaks of chains when he means his imprisonment. Alternate translation: "Remember me and pray for me while I am in prison" (See: [Metonymy](#))

May grace be with you (ULT)

to act graciously toward you all (UST)

Here "grace" stands for God, who shows grace or acts kindly to believers. Alternate translation: "I pray that our Lord Jesus Christ would continue to act graciously toward you all" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [May grace](#)
- [chains](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to act graciously](#)
- [in prison](#)
- [I, Paul](#)
- [own handwriting](#)

ULT

¹⁸ This greeting is with my own [hand](#)—[Paul](#). Remember my [chains](#). [May grace](#) be with you.

4:8 ^[1] Some older versions read, *I sent him to you for this, that he might know the matters about you, and that he may encourage your hearts* .

UST

¹⁸ [I, Paul](#), greet you now in my [own handwriting](#). Remember me and pray for me [in prison](#). I pray that our Lord Jesus the Messiah would continue [to act graciously](#) toward you all.



unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Version 12

Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples from the Bible

...from ***childhood*** you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

...**from** childhood

you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But godliness

with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**.
 But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**.
 But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today salvation

has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved**...
 Today God **has saved** the people in this house...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness

to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes

of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:14](#); [1:15](#); [Notes](#); [3:13](#); [3:25](#))

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE:** **My father** built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed**, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal **was broken down**... (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone were put

around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:16](#); [1:17](#); [1:23](#); [1:26](#); [2:3](#); [2:11](#); [2:12](#); [2:18](#); [3:3](#); [3:12](#))

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.
- When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways:
 - **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
 - **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "**Foxes** have holes

, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon

at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

...it will be more tolerable for **those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, at the day of judgment than for you.
or:
...it will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands

when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**

or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:28](#); [Notes](#); [3:11](#))

Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible

King David was **old** and **advanced in years**. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

...he attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

...as of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect--not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare false

and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

■ **King David** was old

and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

■ “King David was **very old**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

■ ...**a lamb** without blemish

and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

■ “...a lamb **without any blemish at all**...”

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:3](#); [4:1](#))

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

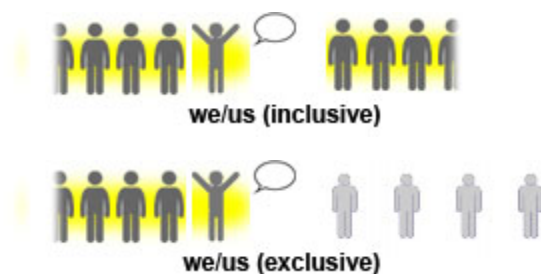
Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but **not you**”. The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us”, “our”, “ours”, and “ourselves”. Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

This page answers the question: *What is exclusive and inclusive “we”?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we”, then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

They said, “**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were **including** the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us”, he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations]]

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:3](#); [1:4](#); [1:7](#); [1:8](#); [1:9](#); [1:10](#); [1:11](#); [1:28](#); [4:2](#); [4:8](#))

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual]]

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:1](#); [4:17](#))

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the **Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called **Beerlahairoi**; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me”.

She named him **Moses** and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out”.

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

You went over the Jordan

and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because **King Herod** wants to kill you.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

She named him Moses

and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

She named him **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi

; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

...she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

...a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

...a young man named **Paul**¹

The footnote would look like:

^[1] Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

^[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that Paul

and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

(Go back to: [Introduction to Colossians](#); [Colossians 1:7](#))

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

- It rains here every night.
1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
 2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
 3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole: This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **one stone upon another** (Luke 19:44 ULT)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the learning of the Egyptians** (Acts 7:22 ULT)

- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

Generalization: This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you about **all things** and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

They found him, and they said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can anything good come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

...they saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat... (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore

. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases”.

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame... (Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

“And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The whole

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

Almost all the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”
or:
Many of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The whole

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

■ The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:6](#))

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are telling me a lie.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided”.

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should **enter under my roof**. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house”.

Let these words **go deeply into your ears**. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say”.

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

the children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

...Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

he resolutely set his face

to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof

. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Let these words go deeply into your ears

(Luke 9:44 ULT)

Be all ears when I say these words to you.

"My eyes grow dim

from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:5](#); [2:7](#); [2:12](#); [3:1](#))

Inclusive and Exclusive “We”

Description

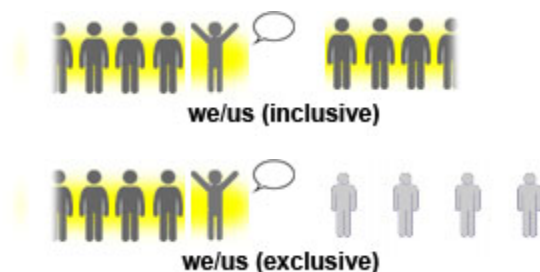
Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

This page answers the question: *What is inclusive and exclusive “we”?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

Inclusive

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Exclusive

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

They said, “**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this "we" could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that "we" would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#)

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:1](#))

Metaphor

Description

A **metaphor** is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

- The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love". This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both *beautiful*. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a **metaphor** is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker's **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table **leg**", "family **tree**", "book **leaf**" (meaning a page in

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going *up*,” “A *highly* intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going *down*,” and “I am feeling very *low*.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat *up*.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us *go ahead* with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You *defend* your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A *flow* of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

Jesus said, “Go and tell that fox...,” (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you", the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**." The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we took no bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See Simile.
4. If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet

. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

It was because of your hard hearts

that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law,

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”

■ **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay**

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

■ And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

■ **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you** to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

■ Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

■ **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay**

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

■ “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand.”

■ “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand.”

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

■ **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

■ Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

■ **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

■ Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

■ Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you become fishers of men

. (Mark 1:17 ULT)

I will make you become **people who gather men**.
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:6](#); [1:8](#); [1:9](#); [1:10](#); [1:11](#); [1:12](#); [1:13](#); [1:14](#); [1:15](#); [1:17](#); [1:18](#); [1:22](#); [1:24](#); [1:25](#); [1:27](#); [1:28](#); [2:2](#); [2:3](#); [2:6](#); [2:7](#); [2:8](#); [2:10](#); [2:11](#); [2:12](#); [2:13](#); [2:14](#); [2:15](#); [2:17](#); [2:18](#); [2:19](#); [2:20](#); [3:3](#); [3:7](#); [3:9](#); [3:10](#); [3:12](#); [3:14](#); [3:16](#); [3:17](#); [3:24](#); [4:3](#); [4:5](#); [4:6](#); [4:8](#))

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

...who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***This cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

"He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***The wine in this cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him ***the throne*** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

"The Lord God will give him ***the kingly authority*** of his father, David."

or:

"The Lord God will ***make him king*** like his ancestor, King David."

who warned you to flee from ***the wrath*** to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

"who warned you to flee from God's coming ***punishment?***"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:5](#); [1:20](#); [1:23](#); [1:25](#); [2:5](#); [2:15](#); [2:18](#); [2:20](#); [3:4](#); [3:8](#); [3:10](#); [3:11](#); [3:15](#); [3:16](#); [3:17](#); [3:22](#); [4:3](#); [4:11](#); [4:18](#))

Parallelism

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term **Doublet** for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

(1) The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

(2) The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULT)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

(3) The second completes what is said in the first.

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULT)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

(4) The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULT)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULT)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13, ULT) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

“Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

“Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

“For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”

- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

you have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13 ULT)

“All you have done is lie to me.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:22](#))

Predictive Past

Description

The predictive past is a figure of speech that uses the past tense to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is sometimes done in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is also called the prophetic perfect.

Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding;
their leaders go hungry, and their masses have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is the predictive past?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

Reason this is a translation issue:

Readers who are not aware of the past tense being used in prophecy to refer to future events may find it confusing.

Examples from the Bible

Now all the entrances to Jericho were closed because of the army of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers." (Joshua 6:1-2 ULT)

For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given;
and the rule will be on his shoulder; (Isaiah 9:6 ULT)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

And about these people also Enoch, the seventh in line from Adam, foretold, saying, "Look, the Lord came with tens of thousands of his holy ones, (Jude 1:14 ULT)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen in the future, but he used the past tense when he said "the Lord came."

Translation Strategies

If the past tense would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the future tense to refer to future events.
2. If it refers to something in the immediate future, use a form that would show that.
3. Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

For to us a child has been born

, to us a son has been given; (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

"For to us a child **will be born**, to us a son **will be given**;

(2) If it refers to something that would happen very soon, use a form that shows that.

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I have handed

over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I **am about to hand** over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.”

(3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I have handed

over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I **am handing** over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.”

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:1](#))

Pronouns

Description

Pronouns are words that people might use to refer to someone or something instead of using a noun. Some examples are "I", "you", "he", "it", "this", "that", "himself", "someone", and others. Personal pronouns are the most common type of pronoun.

This page answers the question: *What are pronouns and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show if the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may give. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

Person

- First Person - The speaker and possibly others (I, we)
 - [Exclusive and Inclusive “We”](#)
- Second Person - The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
 - [Forms of You](#)
- Third Person - Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

Number

- Singular - one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural - more than one (we, you, they)
 - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual - two (Some languages have pronouns for specifically two people or two things.)

Gender

- Masculine - he
- Feminine - she
- Neuter - it

Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Other Types of pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- **John saw** himself

in the mirror. - The word “himself” refers to John.

Interrogative Pronouns are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: who, whom, whose, what, where, when, why, how

- Who

built the house?

Relative Pronouns mark a relative clause. They give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence: that, which, who, whom, where, when

- **I saw the house** that

John built. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.

- **I saw the man** who

built the house. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else: this, these, that, those.

- **Have you seen** this

here?

- **Who is** that over there?

Indefinite pronouns are used when no particular noun is being referred to: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- **He does not want to talk to** anyone

.

- Someone fixed it, but I do not know who.
- They say that you should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:2](#))

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful...” (Mark 2:24 ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

■ I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ “My soul

exalts the Lord.” (Luke 1:46 ULT)

■ “**I** exalt the Lord.”

...the Pharisees

said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

■ **...a representative of the Pharisees** said to him...

...I looked on all the deeds that my hands

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

had accomplished... (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

I looked on all the deeds that *I* had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:1](#))

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

¹⁰ See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. ¹¹ [1]

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

⁵³ [Then every man went to his own house.... ¹¹ She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more."] [2]

[2] The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:53-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand.
¹⁵ There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him.
 It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” ¹⁶[¹]

[¹] The best ancient copies omit v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

(1) Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵
 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what
 comes out of the person that defiles him.” ¹⁶[¹]

[¹] The best ancient copies omit verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let
 him hear.*

(2) Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵
 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what
 comes out of the person that defiles him. ¹⁶ If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” [¹]

[¹] Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Introduction to Colossians](#))

Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

Biblical Witness

“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and...a voice came out of the heavens saying, **“This is my beloved Son.** I am very pleased with him.” (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

Jesus said, “I praise you **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth,...no one knows the **Son** except the **Father**, and no one knows the **Father** except the **Son**” (Matthew 11:25-27 ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into **the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.** (Matthew 28:19 ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal.

The Father **loves** the Son. (John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

I **love** the Father, I do what the Father commands me, just as he gave me the commandment. (John 14:31 ULT)

...no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son. (Luke 10:22 ULT)

The terms “Father” and “Son” also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

Jesus said, “Father, glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you...I glorified you on the earth,...Now Father, glorify me...with the glory that **I had with you before the world was created.**” (John 17:1-5 ULT)

But in these last days, he [God the Father] has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. It is through him that God also made the universe. He is the brightness of God’s glory, **the very character of his essence.** He even holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3 ULT)

Jesus said to him, “I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? **Whoever has seen me has seen the Father.** How can you say, ‘Show us the Father’? (John 14:9 ULT)

This page answers the question: *Why are these concepts important in referring to God?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-faithful\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-sonofgod\]\]](#)

Human Relationships

Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father

and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human "father" and "son." In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

Translation Strategies

1. Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words "son" and "father." Determine which words in your language best represent the divine "Son" and "Father."
2. If your language has more than one word for "son," use the word that has the closest meaning to "only son" (or "first son" if necessary).
3. If your language has more than one word for "father," use the word that has the closest meaning to "birth father," rather than "adoptive father."

(See *God the Father* and *Son of God* pages in [unfoldingWord® Translation Words](#) for help translating "Father" and "Son.")

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:13](#))



unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Version 14

admonish, warned, aware

Definition:

The term “admonish” means to firmly warn or advise someone.

- Usually “admonish” means to advise someone not to do something.
- In the body of Christ, believers are taught to admonish each other to avoid sin and to live holy lives.
- The word “admonish” could be translated as “encourage not to sin” or “urge someone to not sin.”

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 09:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2094, H5749, G3560, G3867, G5537

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:28](#); [3:16](#))

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An "adversary" is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
- The term "adversary" may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:14
- Isaiah 09:11
- Job 06:23
- Lamentations 04:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G5227

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:21](#))

age, aged

Definition:

The term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could also be translated as “era” or “number of years old” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase “at a very old age” could be translated as “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The phrase “this present evil age” means “during this time right now when people are very evil.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:28
- 1 Corinthians 02:07
- Hebrews 06:05
- Job 05:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: G165, G1074

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:26](#))

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father](#), son, [Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:21](#))

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chief, [head](#), messenger, Michael, [ruler](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 02:13
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 01:20
- Zechariah 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:03** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”

- **23:06** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- **25:08** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, G2465

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:18](#))

apostle, apostleship

Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means “someone who is sent out” or “sent-out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [authority](#), disciple, James (son of Zebedee), [Paul](#), the twelve)

Bible References:

- Jude 01:17-19
- Luke 09:12-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:01** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:02** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:08** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G651, G652, G2491, G5376, G5570

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:1](#))

authority

Definition:

The term “authority” refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as, “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as, “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: citizen, command, [obey](#), [power](#), [ruler](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:10
- Esther 09:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 03:6-7
- Luke 12:05
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 01:22
- Matthew 08:09
- Matthew 28:19
- Titus 03:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2715, G5247

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:13](#); [1:16](#); [2:10](#); [2:15](#))

baptize, baptized, baptism

Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms “baptize” and “baptism” usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term “baptize” could be translated as “purify,” “pour out on,” “plunge (or dip) into,” “wash.” For example, “baptize you with water” could be translated as, “plunge you into water.”
- The term “baptism” could be translated as “purification,” “a pouring out,” “a dipping,” “a cleansing.”
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: John (the Baptist), repent, [Holy Spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:38
- Acts 08:36
- Acts 09:18
- Acts 10:48
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:14
- Matthew 28:18-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:03** When people heard John’s message, many of them repented from their sins, and John **baptized** them. Many religious leaders also came to be **baptized** by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.
- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be **baptized** by John.
- **24:07** John said to Jesus, “I am not worthy to **baptize** you. You should **baptize** me instead.”
- **42:10** So go, make disciples of all people groups by **baptizing** them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be **baptized** in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”
- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were **baptized** and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- **45:11** As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to some water. The Ethiopian said, “Look! There is some water! May I be **baptized**?”
- **46:05** Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias **baptized** him.
- **49:14** Jesus invites you to believe in him and be **baptized**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G907

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:12](#))

Barnabas

Facts:

Barnabas was one of the early Christians who lived during the time of the apostles.

- Barnabas was from the Israelite tribe of Levi and was from the island of Cyprus.
- When Saul (Paul) became a Christian, Barnabas urged the other believers to accept him as a fellow believer.
- Barnabas and Paul traveled together to preach the good news about Jesus in different cities.
- His name was Joseph, but he was called "Barnabas," which means "son of encouragement."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Christian, Cyprus, [good news](#), Levite, [Paul](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 04:36
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 13:03
- Acts 15:33
- Colossians 04:10-11
- Galatians 02:9-10
- Galatians 02:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **46:08** Then a believer named **Barnabas** took Saul to the apostles and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.
- **46:09** **Barnabas** and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church. I
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were fasting and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, "Set apart for me **Barnabas** and Saul to do the work I have called them to do." So the church in Antioch prayed for **Barnabas** and Saul and placed their hands on them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G921

(Go back to: [Colossians 4:10](#))

bear, bearer, carry

Facts:

The term “bear” literally means “carry” something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child.
- To “bear a burden” means to “experience difficult things.” These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit” or “have fruit.”
- The expression “bear witness” means “testify” or “report what one has seen or experienced.”
- The statement that “a son will not bear the iniquity of his father” means that he “will not be held responsible for” or “will not be punished for” his father’s sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as “carry” or “be responsible for” or “produce” or “have” or “endure,” depending on the context.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: burden, Elisha, endure, [fruit](#), iniquity, report, sheep, [strength](#), [testimony](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- Lamentations 03:27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H3201, H3205, H5375, H5445, H5449, H6030, H6509, H6779, G142, G430, G941, G1080, G1627, G2592, G3140, G4160, G4722, G4828, G5041, G5088, G5342, G5409, G5576

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:13](#))

beloved

Definition:

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved,” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:14
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 John 04:07
- Mark 01:11
- Mark 12:06
- Revelation 20:09
- Romans 16:08
- Song of Solomon 01:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G27, G5207

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:7](#); [4:7](#); [4:9](#); [4:14](#))

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), [prison](#), [servant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Leviticus 08:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H247, H481, H519, H615, H631, H632, H640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G254, G331, G332, G1195, G1196, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2611, G2615, G3734, G3784, G3814, G4019, G4029, G4385, G4886, G4887, G5265

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:14](#); [4:3](#); [4:18](#))

blameless

Definition:

The term “blameless” literally means “without blame.” It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being “blameless” behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is “one who fears God and turns away from evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “with no fault to his character” or “completely obedient to God” or “avoiding sin” or “keeping away from evil.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:10
- 1 Thessalonians 03:11-13
- 2 Peter 03:14
- Colossians 01:22
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Philippians 02:15
- Philippians 03:06

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5352, H5355, H8535, G273, G274, G298, G299, G338, G410, G423

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:22](#))

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood is a metaphor for life, and when it is shed or poured out, it is a metaphor for the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: [flesh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 02:20
- Acts 05:28
- Colossians 01:20
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 04:11
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:20](#))

body

Definition:

The term “body” literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body,” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- Ephesians 04:04
- Judges 14:08
- Numbers 06:6-8
- Psalm 031:09
- Romans 12:05

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4954, G4983, G5559

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:18](#); [1:22](#); [1:24](#); [2:11](#); [2:17](#); [2:19](#); [2:23](#); [3:15](#))

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:1](#); [1:2](#); [4:7](#); [4:9](#); [4:15](#))

bury, buried, burial

Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: Jericho, tomb)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 09:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:07
- Psalm 079:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G1779, G1780, G2290, G4916, G5027

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:12](#))

call, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), cry)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:15](#); [4:11](#))

children, child, offspring

Definition:

The term "child" (plural "children") refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term "offspring" is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
- Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
- Often in the Bible, "offspring" has the same meaning as "children" or "descendants."
- The term "seed" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as "children of God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."
- If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
- When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
- The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: descendant, seed, promise, son, [spirit](#), believe, [beloved](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:28
- 3 John 01:04
- Galatians 04:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:05
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:07
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 05:25
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 12:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1081, G1085, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:20](#); [3:21](#))

chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones)” or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: appoint, [Christ](#))

Bible References:

- 2 John 01:01
- Colossians 03:12
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:07
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 08:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H970, H972, H977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G3724, G4400, G4401, G4758, G4899, G5500

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:27](#); [3:12](#))

Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), David, [Jesus](#), anoint)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:1-3
- Acts 02:35
- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25
- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:07** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:08** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:01** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David’s own descendants.
- **21:05** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:06** God’s prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:07** “But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.’”

- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:06** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:1](#); [1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:4](#); [1:7](#); [1:24](#); [1:27](#); [1:28](#); [2:2](#); [2:5](#); [2:6](#); [2:8](#); [2:11](#); [2:17](#); [2:20](#); [3:1](#); [3:3](#); [3:4](#); [3:11](#); [3:15](#); [3:16](#); [3:24](#); [4:3](#); [4:12](#))

church, Church

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God’s word preached. The term “the Church” often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a “called out” assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter (“Church”) to distinguish it from the local church.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone’s home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: How to Translate Unknowns.)

(See also: assembly, believe, Christian)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:12
- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- 1 Timothy 03:05
- Acts 09:31
- Acts 14:23
- Acts 15:41
- Colossians 04:15
- Ephesians 05:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Philippians 04:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **46:09** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **46:10** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1577

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:18](#); [1:24](#); [4:15](#); [4:16](#))

circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God’s covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham’s descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Abraham, covenant)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48
- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 05:03

- Judges 15:18
- 2 Samuel 01:20
- Jeremiah 09:26
- Ezekiel 32:25
- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:03
- Acts 15:01
- Acts 11:03
- Romans 02:27
- Galatians 05:03
- Ephesians 02:11
- Philippians 03:03
- Colossians 02:11
- Colossians 02:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:03** "You must **circumcise** every male in your family."
- **05:05** That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G203, G564, G1986, G4059, G4061

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:11](#); [2:13](#); [3:11](#); [4:11](#))

clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

Bible References:

- Luke 24:49

Word Data:

- Strong's: H899, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1562, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2224, G2439, G2440, G4016, G4749, G5509

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:10](#); [3:12](#))

Colossae, Colossians

Facts:

In New Testament times, Colossae was a city located in the Roman province of Phrygia, an area of land that is now southwestern Turkey. The Colossians were the people who lived in Colossae.

- Located about 100 miles inland from the Mediterranean Sea, Colossae was on an important trade route between the city of Ephesus and the Euphrates River.
- While in prison in Rome, Paul wrote a letter to the “Colossians” to correct false teachings among the believers at Colossae.
- When he wrote this letter, Paul had not visited the church at Colossae, but had heard about the believers there from his coworker, Epaphras.
- Epaphras was probably the Christian worker who started the church at Colossae.
- The book of Philemon was a letter by Paul addressed to a slave owner in Colossae.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ephesus, [Paul](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2857

([Go back to: Colossians 1:2](#))

comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as, “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as, “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as, “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: [encourage](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:8-11
- 2 Corinthians 01:04
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- Acts 20:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G302, G3870, G3874, G3875, G3888, G3890, G3931

(Go back to: [Colossians 4:11](#))

companion, fellow worker, friend

Facts:

The term “companion” refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage. The term “fellow worker” refers to someone who works with another person.

- Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “friend” or “fellow traveler” or “supporting-person who goes with” or “person who works with.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 37:16
- Hebrews 01:09
- Proverbs 02:17
- Psalms 038:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H441, H2269, H2270, H2273, H2278, H3674, H3675, H4828, H7453, H7462, H7464, G2844, G3353, G4898, G4904

(Go back to: [Colossians 4:11](#))

compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term "compassion" refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A "compassionate" person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word "compassion" refers to caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways of translating "compassion" could include, "deep caring" or "pity" or "helpful mercy."
- The term "compassionate" could also be translated as, "caring and helpful" or "deeply loving and merciful."

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 05:9-11
- Jonah 04:1-3
- Mark 01:41
- Romans 09:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:12](#))

confirm, confirmation, legal

Definition:

The term "confirm" refers to verifying that something is true or legally certifying that a transaction has occurred.

- When a king is "confirmed" it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to verify that what was written is true.
- The "confirmation" of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath "as confirmation" means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate "confirm" could include, "state as true" or "prove to be trustworthy" or "agree with" or "assure" or "promise," depending on the context.

(See also: covenant, oath, trust)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 01:21
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 06:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G950, G951, G3315, G4972

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:7](#))

corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved

Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “corrupt” could be translated as to “influence to do evil” or to “cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term “corruption” could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: [evil](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Genesis 06:12
- Matthew 12:33-35
- Psalm 014:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2610, H3891, H4889, H7843, H7844, G861, G1311, G2704, G5351, G5356

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:22](#))

courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement

Facts:

The term “courage” refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, “courageous” describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression “take courage” means, “don’t be afraid” or “be assured that things will turn out well.”
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be “strong and courageous.”
- The term “courageous” could also be translated as “brave” or “unafraid” or “bold.”
- Depending on the context, to “have courage” could also be translated as, “be emotionally strong” or “be confident” or “stand firm.”
- To “speak with courage” could be translated as, “speak boldly” or “speak without being afraid” or “speak confidently.”

The terms “encourage” and “encouragement” refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is “exhort,” which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term “discourage” refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “encourage” could include “urge” or “comfort” or “say kind things” or “help and support.”
- The phrase “give words of encouragement” means “say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered.”

(See also: confidence, exhort, [fear](#), [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 01:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25
- Matthew 09:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 07:13
- Acts 05:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 03:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H533, H553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G2114, G2115, G2174, G2292, G2293, G2294, G3870, G3874, G3954, G4389, G4837, G5111

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:2; 4:8](#))

create, created, creation, creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as, “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news to “all creation” means to preach the good news to “all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase “Let all creation rejoice” means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: [God](#), [good news](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 04:17-19
- Colossians 01:15
- Galatians 06:15
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G2041, G2602, G2675, G2936, G2937, G2939, G4160, G5480

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:15](#); [1:16](#); [1:23](#); [3:10](#))

cross

Definition:

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb “cross” that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as “execution post” or “tree of death.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: crucify, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:17
- Colossians 02:15
- Galatians 06:12
- John 19:18
- Luke 09:23
- Luke 23:26
- Matthew 10:38
- Philippians 02:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **40:01** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the **cross** on which he would die.
- **40:02** The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called “the Skull” and nailed his arms and feet to the **cross**.
- **40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the **cross** and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the **cross**, he received your punishment.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the **cross** instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4716

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:20](#); [2:14](#))

darkness

Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:06
- 1 John 02:08
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 01:13
- Isaiah 05:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 08:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:13](#))

day

Definition:

The term "day" literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days."
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of "day" could include, "time" or "season" or "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:06
- Daniel 10:04
- Ezra 06:15
- Ezra 06:19
- Matthew 09:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H6242, G2250

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:6](#); [1:9](#))

deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:08
- 1 Timothy 02:14
- 2 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 06:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:8](#))

deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), save)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:10
- Acts 07:35
- Galatians 01:04
- Judges 10:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:03** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G325, G525, G629, G1080, G1325, G1560, G1659, G1807, G1929, G2673, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:13](#))

die, dead, deadly, death,

Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: believe, [faith](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 02:15
- Colossians 02:20
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 05:10
- Romans 05:12
- Romans 06:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:18](#); [1:22](#); [2:12](#); [2:13](#); [2:20](#); [3:3](#); [3:5](#))

dominion

Definition:

The term "dominion" refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan's dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ's death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "authority" or "power" or "control."
- The phrase "have dominion over" could be translated as "rule over" or "manage."

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:10-11
- Colossians 01:13
- Jude 01:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G2634, G2904, G2961, G2963

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:16](#))

earth, earthen, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [metonymy](#))
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 06:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 06:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G4578, G5517

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:16](#); [1:20](#); [3:2](#); [3:5](#))

envy, covet

Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even someone else’s spouse.

(See also: jealous)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 02:01
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 07:20-23
- Proverbs 03:31-32
- Romans 01:29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G866, G1937, G2205, G2206, G3713, G3788, G4123, G4124, G4190, G5354, G5355, G5366

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:5](#))

epistle, letter

Definition:

A letter is a written message sent to a person or group of persons who are usually a distance away from the writer. An epistle is a special type of letter, often written in a more formal style, for a special purpose, such as teaching.

- In New Testament times, epistles and other types of letters were written on parchment made from animal skins or on papyrus made from plant fibers.
- The New Testament epistles from Paul, John, James, Jude, and Peter were letters of instruction that they wrote to encourage, exhort, and teach the early Christians in various cities throughout the Roman Empire.
- Ways to translate this term could include “written message” or “written down words” or “writing.”

(See also: [encourage](#), exhort, [teach](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:27
- 2 Thessalonians 02:15
- Acts 09:1-2
- Acts 28:21-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H104, H107, H3791, H4385, H5406, H5407, H5612, G1121, G1992

(Go back to: [Colossians 4:16](#))

evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

(Go back to: [Introduction to Colossians](#); [Colossians 1:21](#); [3:5](#); [3:8](#))

face, facial

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:1](#))

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: believe, [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:07
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:4](#); [1:23](#); [2:5](#); [2:7](#); [2:12](#); [Notes](#))

faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: adultery, believe, disobey, [faith](#), believe)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!'"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:2](#); [1:7](#); [4:7](#); [4:9](#))

fear, afraid, dread

Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term "dread" refers to extreme or intense fear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect;" or "deep respect;" "revere;" or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or, "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or, "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: marvel, awe, [Lord](#), [power](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:22](#))

festival

Definition:

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for “festival” in the Old Testament literally means “appointed time.”
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word “feast” is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
 - Passover
 - Festival of Unleavened Bread
 - Firstfruits
 - Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
 - Festival of Trumpets
 - Day of Atonement
 - Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

(See also: feast)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 2 Chronicles 08:13
- Exodus 05:01
- John 04:45
- Luke 22:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1974, H2166, H2282, H2287, H6213, H4150, G1456, G1858, G1859

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:16](#))

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](#), sacrifice, son)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 02:6-7
- Revelation 01:05

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G4416, G5207

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:15](#); [1:18](#))

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: euphemism). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:22](#); [1:24](#); [2:1](#); [2:5](#); [2:11](#); [2:13](#); [2:18](#); [2:23](#); [3:22](#))

forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Psalms 025:11
- Psalms 025:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:02
- Luke 05:21
- Acts 08:22
- Ephesians 04:31-32
- Colossians 03:12-14
- 1 John 02:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.

- **29:01** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:08** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

Word Data:

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:14](#); [3:13](#))

found, founder, foundation

Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: cornerstone, [create](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H134, H787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G2310, G2311, G2602

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:23](#))

free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty

Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression to “set someone free” or to “free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression to “set free” could be translated as to “cause to be free” or to “rescue from slavery” or to “release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26
- Galatians 05:01
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 06:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G558, G629, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G3089, G3955, G4506, G5483

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:11](#))

fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces--”that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural, “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, [Holy Spirit](#), vine, womb)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 01:11
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 03:08
- Matthew 07:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352

(Go back to: [Colossians 1 General Notes](#); 1:6; 1:10)

fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: prophet, [Christ](#), [minister](#), [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:21
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:04** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:03** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:07** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:05** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:07** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:05** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:25](#); [4:17](#))

generation

Definition:

The term “generation” generally refers to a group of people who are all alive at the same time. They are all born in the same general time period and are therefore about the same age.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: descendant, [evil](#), [ancestor](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 03:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:07
- Mark 08:12
- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1755, H1859, H8435, G1074

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:26](#))

Gentile

Facts:

The term "Gentile" refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term "uncircumcised" is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God's people.
- The Jews were also called "Israelites" or "Hebrews" at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a "Gentile."
- Gentile could also be translated as "not a Jew" or "non-Jewish" or "not an Israelite" (Old Testament) or "non-Jew."
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: Israel, Jacob, [Jew](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 09:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 02:16
- Luke 02:32
- Matthew 05:47
- Matthew 06:5-7
- Romans 11:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1471, G1482, G1484, G1672

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:27](#))

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God's character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh's presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God's greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God's greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: [honor](#), majesty, exalt, [obey](#), praise)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28

- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:19
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:05
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Revelation 15:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glor**y to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glor**y and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glor**y of God.”
- **37:08** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glor**y if you believe in me?”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2744, G4888

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:11](#); [1:27](#); [3:4](#))

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [false god](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [false god](#), [Son of God](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:1](#); [1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:6](#); [1:10](#); [1:15](#); [1:25](#); [1:27](#); [2:2](#); [2:9](#); [2:12](#); [2:19](#); [3:1](#); [3:3](#); [3:6](#); [3:12](#); [3:16](#); [3:17](#); [4:3](#); [4:11](#); [4:12](#))

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Facts:

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
- Usually "Father" is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ancestor](#), [God](#), [heaven](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 08:4-6
- 1 John 02:01
- 1 John 02:23
- 1 John 03:01
- Colossians 01:1-3
- Ephesians 05:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 23:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:08** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, G3962

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:12](#); [3:17](#))

god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, [image](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:02
- Exodus 32:01
- Psalms 031:06
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 02:22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:5](#))

good news, gospel

Definition:

The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God’s salvation for people through Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God’s message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/ message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See also: [kingdom](#), sacrifice, save)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Acts 08:25
- Colossians 01:23
- Galatians 01:06
- Luke 08:1-3
- Mark 01:14
- Philippians 02:22
- Romans 01:03

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:06** The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- **26:03** Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- **45:10** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- **47:01** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **47:13** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”
- **50:03** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G2097, G2098, G4283

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:5](#); [1:23](#))

good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), profit, [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- **01:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **08:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.

- **28:01** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:10](#))

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- Acts 04:33
- Acts 06:08
- Acts 14:04
- Colossians 04:06
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:07
- John 01:16
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:2](#); [1:6](#); [3:16](#); [4:6](#); [4:18](#))

Greek, Grecian

Facts:

The term "Greek" refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece, it is also a person from the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The term "Grecian" means "Greek-speaking."

- Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as "Greeks" in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.
- The phrase "Grecian Jews" referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the "Hebraic Jews" who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic.
- Other ways to translate "Grecian" could include, "Greek-speaking" or "culturally Greek" or "Greek."
- When referring to non-Jews, "Greek" could be translated as "Gentile."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, [Gentile](#), Greece, Hebrew, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 06:1
- Acts 09:29
- Acts 11:20
- Acts 14:1-2
- Colossians 03:11
- Galatians 02:3-5
- John 07:35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3125, G1672, G1673, G1674, G1675, G1676

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:11](#))

hand

Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
- To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), [captive](#), [honor](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G5495, G5496, G5497

(Go back to: [Colossians 4:18](#))

head

Definition:

The word "head" refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including "top," "first," "beginning," "source," and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term "head" include:

- The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression "head of a mountain" refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term "head" refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase "You have made me the head over nations" means "You have made me the ruler..." or "You have given me authority over...."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "authority" or "ruler" or "the one who is responsible for."
- The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include "top" or "beginning" or "source" or "leader."

(See also: grain)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:18](#); [2:10](#); [2:19](#))

heart

Definition:

The term "heart" refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires."
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:2](#); [3:12](#); [3:15](#); [3:16](#); [3:22](#); [4:8](#))

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: [kingdom of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:5](#); [1:16](#); [1:20](#); [1:23](#); [4:1](#))

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [Son of God](#), gift)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- Acts 08:17
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:04
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 051:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:08** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:03** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:03** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:08** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**.”
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:8](#))

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38

- Acts 07:33
- Acts 11:08
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:22
- 1 Thessalonians 03:13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:01** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:05** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:22](#); [3:12](#))

honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and to “honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, [glory](#), [glory](#), praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 04:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 06:04
- Matthew 15:06

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1784, G2151, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:23](#))

hope, hoped

Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust,” as in “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as “confidence.” This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to “hope” could also be translated as to “wish” or to “desire” or to “expect.”
- The expression “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as “hope in” God could also be translated as, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: bless, confidence, [good](#), [obey](#), trust, [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 02:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:06
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 01:05
- Job 11:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H982, H983, H986, H2620, H2976, H3175, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4268, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G91, G560, G1679, G1680, G2070

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:5](#); [1:23](#); [1:27](#))

house

Definition:

The term "house" refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as "household" or "descendants," etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshipped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells." The phrase "house of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: David, descendant, house of God, household, kingdom of Israel, tabernacle, temple, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

(Go back to: [Colossians 4:15](#))

humble, humbled, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: proud)

Bible References:

- James 01:21
- James 03:13
- James 04:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:04
- Matthew 23:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **34:10** “God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:18](#); [2:23](#); [3:12](#))

image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue

Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: [false god](#), [God](#), [false god](#), image of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- Acts 07:43
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- Matthew 22:21
- Romans 01:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H457, H1544, H2553, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G1504, G5179

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:15](#); [3:10](#))

in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

Definition:

The phrase “in Christ” and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include “in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Possible meanings for the term “in Christ” could include “because you belong to Christ” or “through the relationship you have with Christ” or “based on your faith in Christ.”
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word “in” belongs with the verb. For example, “share in Christ” means to “share in” the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To “glory in” Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To “believe in” Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “in Christ” and “in the Lord” (and related phrases) could include:
 - “who belong to Christ”
 - “because you believe in Christ”
 - “because Christ has saved us”
 - “in service to the Lord”
 - “relying on the Lord”
 - “because of what the Lord has done.”
- People who “believe in” Christ or who “have faith in” Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like “believe in” or “share in” or “trust in.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Lord](#), [Jesus](#), believe, [faith](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:05
- 2 Corinthians 02:17
- 2 Timothy 01:01
- Galatians 01:22
- Galatians 02:17
- Philemon 01:06
- Revelation 01:10
- Romans 09:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1519, G2962, G5547

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:2](#); [1:4](#); [1:28](#); [2:5](#); [3:18](#); [3:20](#); [4:7](#); [4:17](#))

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after the parent(s) die. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An "inheritance" is the thing(s) that is received, and an "heir" is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "inherited blessings."

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- 1 Peter 01:04
- 2 Samuel 21:03
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 05:21
- Genesis 15:07
- Hebrews 09:15
- Jeremiah 02:07
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 079:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:12](#); [3:24](#))

instruct, instruction, instructors

Facts:

The terms “instruct” and “instruction” refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

- To “give instructions” means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
- When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
- Depending on the context, the term “instruct” could also be translated as “tell” or “direct” or “teach” or “give instructions to.”
- The term “instructions” could be translated as “directions” or “explanations” or “what he has told you to do.”
- When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as “commands” or “orders.”

(See also: command, decree, [teach](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 14:04
- Genesis 26:05
- Hebrews 11:22
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 11:01
- Proverbs 01:30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H241, H376, H559, H631, H1004, H1696, H1697, H3256, H3289, H3384, H4148, H4156, H4687, H4931, H4941, H6098, H6310, H6490, H6680, H7919, H8451, G1256, G1299, G1319, G1321, G1378, G1781, G1785, G2727, G2753, G3559, G3560, G3811, G3852, G3853, G4264, G4367, G4822

(Go back to: [Colossians 4:10](#))

Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), high priest, [kingdom of God](#), Mary, Savior, [Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:11
- 1 John 02:02
- 1 John 04:15
- 1 Timothy 01:02
- 2 Peter 01:02
- 2 Thessalonians 02:15
- 2 Timothy 01:10
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 05:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 09:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 01:21
- Matthew 04:03
- Philippians 02:05
- Philippians 02:10
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:02** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **24:07** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.

- **25:08 Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:08** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:03** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:02** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:08** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17 Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2424, G5547

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:1](#); [1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:4](#); [2:6](#); [3:17](#); [3:24](#); [4:12](#))

Jew, Jewish

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

(See also: Abraham, Jacob, Israel, Babylon, Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:05
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 03:11
- John 02:14
- Matthew 28:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:02** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G2450, G2451, G2452, G2453, G2454

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:11](#))

John Mark

Facts:

John Mark, also known as “Mark,” was one of the men who traveled with Paul on his missionary journeys. He is most likely the author of the Gospel of Mark.

- John Mark accompanied his cousin Barnabas and Paul on their first missionary journey.
- When Peter was put in prison in Jerusalem, the believers there were praying for him at John Mark’s mother’s house.
- Mark was not an apostle, but was taught by both Paul and Peter and worked together with them in ministry.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Barnabas](#), [Paul](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:11-13
- Acts 12:24-25
- Acts 13:05
- Acts 13:13
- Acts 15:36-38
- Acts 15:39-41
- Colossians 04:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G2491, G3138

(Go back to: [Colossians 4:10](#))

joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

Definition:

joy

The term "joy" refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: [metonymy](#))

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7

- James 01:02
- 3 John 01:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:11](#); [1:24](#); [2:5](#))

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, just, law, law)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:16](#))

kind [NOT kindness]

Definition:

The term “kind” refers to a group or classification of something(s) that share some common characteristics but not all characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each “kind.” For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same “kind,” but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each “kind” as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same “kind.” Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate this term could include “type” or “class” or “group” or “animal (plant) group” or “category.”

Bible References:

- Genesis 01:21
- Genesis 01:24
- Mark 09:29
- Matthew 13:47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2178, H3978, H4327, G1085, G5449

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:12](#))

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
- In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
- One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
- The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), king, [kingdom of God](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, Judah, priest)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation."
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon's death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

(Go back to: [Colossians 4:11](#))

kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

Definition:

The terms “kingdom of God” and “kingdom of heaven” both refer to God’s rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term “heaven” to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: [metonymy](#))
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God’s kingdom as “the kingdom of heaven,” probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God’s kingdom forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “kingdom of God” can be translated as “God’s rule (as king)” or “when God reigns as king” or “God’s rule over everything.”
- The term “kingdom of heaven” could also be translated as “God’s rule from heaven as king” or “God in heaven reigning” or “heaven’s reign” or “heaven ruling over everything.” If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase “kingdom of God” could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize “Heaven” to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as “kingdom of heaven (that is, ‘kingdom of God’).”
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of “heaven” in this expression.

(See also: [God](#), [heaven](#), king, [kingdom](#), King of the Jews, reign)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:05
- Acts 08:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 04:11
- John 03:03
- Luke 07:28
- Luke 10:09
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 03:02
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 05:10
- Romans 14:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the **kingdom of God** is near!”
- **28:06** Then Jesus said to his disciples, “It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the **kingdom of God**! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the **kingdom of God**.”
- **29:02** Jesus said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants.”
- **34:01** Jesus told many other stories about the **kingdom of God**. For example, he said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field.”
- **34:03** Jesus told another story, “The **kingdom of God** is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough.”

- **34:04** "The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again."
- **34:05** "The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value."
- **42:09** He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.
- **49:05** Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

Word Data:

- Strong's: G932, G2316, G3772

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:13](#); [4:11](#))

know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

The term "know" and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression "to make known" means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.

(See also: law, [reveal](#), [understand](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G2589, G4267, G4894

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:9](#); [1:10](#); [1:27](#); [2:1](#); [2:2](#); [2:3](#); [3:10](#); [3:24](#); [4:1](#); [4:6](#); [4:7](#); [4:8](#); [4:9](#))

labor, laborer, work, hard work

Definition:

The term "labor" refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word "labor" is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate "labor" could include "work" or "hard work" or "difficult work" or to "work hard."

(See also: hard, labor pains)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:09
- 1 Thessalonians 03:05
- Galatians 04:10-11
- James 05:04
- John 04:38
- Luke 10:02
- Matthew 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2872, G2873, G4866, G4904

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:29](#); [3:23](#))

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives" could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term "life" could be translated in the following ways: "eternal life" or "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: [death](#), everlasting)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were *_living_* in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:20](#); [3:3](#); [3:4](#); [3:7](#))

light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [righteous](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 John 02:08
- 2 Corinthians 04:06
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 02:05
- John 01:05
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 06:23
- Nehemiah 09:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:12](#))

like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: Simile)
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression “the likeness of” could be translated as “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or to “be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as to “be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), image of God, [image](#), perish)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 01:05
- Mark 08:24
- Matthew 17:02
- Matthew 18:03
- Psalms 073:05
- Revelation 01:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1823, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G2596, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4833, G5108, G5613, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:6](#); [1:7](#); [2:6](#); [2:7](#); [2:20](#); [3:12](#); [3:13](#); [3:18](#); [3:22](#); [3:23](#); [4:4](#))

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09

- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:01
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:23
- Ephesians 06:9
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Colossians 03:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 02:01
- 1 Peter 01:03
- Jude 01:05
- Revelation 15:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:10](#); [2:6](#); [3:13](#); [3:17](#); [3:18](#); [3:20](#); [3:22](#); [3:23](#); [3:24](#); [4:1](#); [4:7](#); [4:17](#))

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
 - Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
 - When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
 - In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
 - This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
 - The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.
3. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: covenant, [death](#), sacrifice, save, [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:07
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 Thessalonians 04:10
- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:06
- Jeremiah 02:02
- John 03:16

- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- Philippians 01:09
- Song of Solomon 01:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:08** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:4](#); [1:8](#); [1:13](#); [2:2](#); [3:12](#); [3:14](#); [3:19](#))

Luke

Facts:

Luke wrote two books of the New Testament: the gospel of Luke and the book of Acts.

- In his letter to the Colossians, Paul refers to Luke as a doctor. Paul also mentions Luke in two of his other letters.
- It is thought that Luke was a Greek and a Gentile who came to know Christ. In his gospel, Luke includes several accounts that highlight Jesus' love for all peoples, both Jews and Gentiles.
- Luke accompanied Paul on two of his missionary journeys and helped him in his work.
- In some early church writings, it is said that Luke was born in the city of Antioch in Syria.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Antioch, [Paul](#), Syria)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:11-13
- Colossians 04:12-14
- Philemon 01:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3065

(Go back to: [Colossians 4:14](#))

lust, lustful, passions, desires

Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, "lust" usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one's own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, "lust" could be translated as "wrong desire" or "strong desire" or "wrongful sexual desire" or "strong immoral desire" or to "strongly desire to sin."
- The phrase to "lust after" could be translated as to "wrongly desire" or to "think immorally about" or to "immorally desire."

(See also: adultery, [false god](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 Timothy 02:22
- Galatians 05:16
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9
- Matthew 05:28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H183, H185, H310, H1730, H2181, H2183, H2530, H5178, H5375, H5689, H5691, H5869, H7843, G766, G1937, G1939, G2237, G3715, G3806

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:5](#))

manager, steward, stewardship

Definition:

The term “manager” or “steward” in the Bible refers to a servant who was entrusted with taking care of his master’s property and business dealings.

- A steward was given a lot of responsibility, which included supervising the work of other servants.
- The term “manager” is a more modern term for a steward. Both terms refer to someone who manages practical affairs for someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “supervisor” or “household organizer” or “servant who manages” or “person who organizes.”

(See also: [servant](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:4-5
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 43:16
- Isaiah 55:10-11
- Luke 08:03
- Luke 16:02
- Matthew 20:8-10
- Titus 01:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H376, H4453, H5057, H6485, G2012, G3621, G3623

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:25](#))

meek, meekness

Definition:

The term “meek” describes a person who is gentle, submissive, and willing to suffer injustice. Meekness is the ability to be gentle even when harshness or force might seem appropriate.

- Meekness is often associated with humility.
- This term could also be translated as “gentle” or “mild-mannered” or “sweet-tempered.”
- The term “meekness” could be translated as “gentleness” or “humility.”

(See also: [humble](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Corinthians 10:1-2
- 2 Timothy 02:25
- Matthew 05:05
- Matthew 11:29
- Psalms 037:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6035, H6037, G4235, G4236, G4239, G4240

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:12](#))

member, body parts

Definition:

The term “member” refers to one part of a complex body or group.

- The New Testament describes Christians as “members” of the body of Christ. Believers in Christ belong to a group that is made up of many members.
- Jesus Christ is the “head” of the body and individual believers function as the members of the body. The Holy Spirit gives each member of the body a special role to help the entire body to function well.
- Individuals who participate in groups such as the Jewish Council and the Pharisees are also called “members” of these groups.

(See also: [body](#), Pharisee, council)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:15
- 1 Corinthians 12:14-17
- Numbers 16:02
- Romans 12:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1121, H3338, H5315, H8212, G1010, G3196, G3609

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:5](#))

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, miracle, [power](#), [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H46, H47, H117, H202, H386, H410, H430, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:11](#))

mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”
- The expression “double-minded” could also be translated as “doubting” or “unable to decide” or “with conflicting thoughts.”

(See also: believe, [heart](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 10:27
- Mark 06:51-52
- Matthew 21:29
- Matthew 22:37
- James 04:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G1271, G1374, G3328, G3525, G3540, G3563, G4993, G5590

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:21](#); [2:18](#); [3:2](#))

multiply, multiplied, multiplication

Definition:

The term “multiply” means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

- God told animals and human beings to “multiply” and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
- Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as “increase” or “cause to increase” or “greatly increase in number” or “become greater in number” or “become more numerous.”
- The phrase “greatly multiply your pain” could also be translated as “cause your pain to become more severe” or “cause you to experience much more pain.”
- To “multiply horses” means to “greedily keep acquiring more horses” or to “get large numbers of horses.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:01
- Genesis 09:07
- Genesis 22:17
- Hosea 04:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3254, H3527, H6280, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G4052, G4129

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:7](#))

mystery, hidden truth

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “mystery” refers to something unknown or difficult to understand that God is now explaining.

- The New Testament states that the gospel of Christ was a mystery that was not known in past ages.
- One of the specific points described as a mystery is that Jews and Gentiles would be equal in Christ.
- This term could also be translated as “secret” or “hidden things” or “something unknown.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Gentile](#), [good news](#), [Jew](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 04:2-4
- Ephesians 06:19-20
- Luke 08:9-10
- Mark 04:10-12
- Matthew 13:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1219, H7328, G3466

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:26](#); [1:27](#); [2:2](#); [4:3](#))

name

Definition:

The term "name" refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term "name" is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
- The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved." (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
- Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
- The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
- The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
- The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
- The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:17](#))

new moon

Definition:

The term “new moon” refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth at sunset. It also refers to the first day a new moon should be visible after the moon has been dark for a few days.

- In ancient times, new moons marked the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
- The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram’s horn.
- The Bible also refers to this time as the “beginning of the month.”

(See also: month, [earth](#), [festival](#), horn, sheep)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 1 Samuel 20:05
- 2 Kings 04:23-24
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Isaiah 01:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2320, G3376, G3561

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:16](#))

obey, obedient

Definition:

The term "obey" means to do what has been commanded by a person or law. The term "obedient" describes someone who obeys. Sometimes a command prohibits doing something, as in "do not steal." In this case, to "obey" means not to steal.

- Usually the term "obey" is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority. For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means "do what is commanded" or "follow orders" or "do what God says to do."
- The term "obedient" could be translated as "doing what was commanded" or "following orders" or "doing what God commands."

(See also: citizen, command, disobey, [kingdom](#), law)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:25
- James 02:10
- Luke 06:47
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **05:06** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:10** "Because you (Abraham) have *_obeyed_* me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family"
- **05:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:07** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5442

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:20](#); [3:22](#))

ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: command, decree, law, ordain, statute)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 08:31-33
- Malachi 03:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:14](#))

partial, partiality

Definition:

The terms “be partial” and “show partiality” refer to making a choice to treat certain people as more important than other people.

- This is similar to showing favoritism, which means to treat some people better than others.
- Usually partiality or favoritism is shown to people because they are more rich or more popular than other people.
- The Bible instructs his people to not show partiality or favoritism to people who are rich or of high status.
- In his letter to the Romans, Paul teaches that God judges people fairly and with no partiality.
- The book of James teaches that it is wrong to give someone a better seat or better treatment because they are rich.

(See also: favor)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 01:17
- Malachi 02:09
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:16
- Romans 02:10-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5234, H6440, G991, G1519, G2983, G4299, G4383

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:25](#))

patient, patience, impatient

Definition:

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: endure, [forgive](#), [persevere](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:20
- 2 Peter 03:8-9
- Hebrews 06:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 037:7
- Revelation 02:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H750, H753, H2342, H3811, H6960, H7114, G420, G463, G1933, G3114, G3115, G3116, G5278, G5281

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:11](#); [3:12](#))

Paul, Saul

Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name "Paul."
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: christian, jewish leaders, rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:03
- Acts 08:03
- Acts 09:26
- Acts 13:10
- Galatians 01:01
- Philemon 01:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **45:06** A young man named **Saul** agreed with the people who killed Stephen and guarded their robes while they threw stones at him.
- **46:01** **Saul** was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- **46:02** While **Saul** was on his way to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. **Saul** heard someone say, "**Saul! Saul!** Why do you persecute me?"
- **46:05** So Ananias went to **Saul**, placed his hands on him, and said, "Jesus who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit." **Saul** immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.
- **46:06** Right away, **Saul** began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"
- **46:09** Barnabas and **Saul** went there (Antioch) to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.
- **47:01** As **Saul** traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, "**Paul**."
- **47:14** **Paul** and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3972, G4569

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:1](#); [1:23](#); [4:18](#))

peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:2](#); [1:20](#); [3:15](#))

perfect, perfected, perfection, complete

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament Book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:02
- James 03:02
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Psalms 019:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G199, G2675, G2676, G3647, G5046, G5047, G5048, G5050

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:28](#); [4:12](#))

persevere, perseverance

Definition:

The terms “persevere” and “perseverance” refer to continuing to do something even though it may be very difficult or take a long time.

- To persevere can also mean to keep acting in a Christ-like way even while going through difficult trials or circumstances.
- If a person has “perseverance” it means he is able to keep doing what he should do, even when it is painful or difficult.
- Continuing to believe what God teaches requires perseverance, especially when faced with false teachings.
- Be careful not to use a word like “stubborn” which usually has a negative meaning.

(See also: [patient](#), trial)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:11
- Ephesians 06:18
- James 05:9-11
- Luke 08:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3115, G4343, G5281

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:11](#))

power, powerful, powerfully

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 01:25
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 03:21
- Psalm 080:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H410, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G1411, G1415, G1754, G1756, G1849, G1850, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2904, G3168

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:11](#); [1:29](#))

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), [forgive](#), praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:3](#); [1:9](#); [4:2](#); [4:3](#); [4:12](#))

preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: [good news](#), [Jesus](#), [kingdom of God](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:01** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:06** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

Word Data:

- Strong's:
 - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
 - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:23](#); [1:28](#))

prison, prisoner, imprison

Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: captive)

Bible References:

- Acts 25:04
- Ephesians 04:01
- Luke 12:58
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 06:17
- Matthew 05:26
- Matthew 14:03
- Matthew 25:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H612, H613, H615, H616, H631, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H4929, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G1198, G1199, G1200, G1201, G1202, G1210, G2252, G3612, G4788, G4869, G5084, G5438, G5439

(Go back to: [Colossians 4:10](#))

prostrate, worship

Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: sacrifice, praise, [honor](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:18](#))

provoke, provoked, provocation

Facts:

The term “provoke” means to cause someone to experience a negative reaction or feeling.

- To provoke someone to anger means to do something that causes that person to be angry. This could also be translated as to “cause to become angry” or to “anger.”
- When used in a phrase such as, “do not provoke him,” this could be translated as “do not anger him” or “do not cause him to be angry” or “do not make him angry with you.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3707, H3708, H4784, H4843, H5006, H7065, H7069, H7107, H7264, G2042, G3863, G3947, G3949, G4292

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:21](#))

psalm

Definition:

The term “psalm” refers to a sacred song, often in the form of a poem that was written to be sung.

- The Old Testament Book of Psalms has a collection of these songs written by King David and other Israelites such as Moses, Solomon, and Asaph, among others.
- The psalms were used by the nation of Israel in their worship of God.
- Psalms can be used to express joy, faith, and reverence, as well as pain and sorrow.
- In the New Testament, Christians are instructed to sing psalms to God as a way of worshiping him.

(See also: David, [faith](#), [joy](#), Moses, [holy](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 13:33
- Acts 13:35
- Colossians 03:16
- Luke 20:42

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2158, H2167, H4210, G5567, G5568

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:16](#))

puffed up

Definition:

The term “puffed up” is a figurative expression that refers to being proud or arrogant. (See: [Idiom](#))

- A person who is puffed up has an attitude of feeling superior to others.
- Paul taught that knowing a lot of information or having religious experiences can lead to being “puffed up” or proud.
- Other languages may have a similar idiom or a different one that expresses this meaning, such as “having a big head.”
- This could also be translated as “very proud” or “disdainful of others” or “haughty” or “thinking oneself better than others.”

(See also: arrogant, proud)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:6-7
- 1 Corinthians 08:01
- 2 Corinthians 12:6-7
- Habakkuk 02:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6075, G5448

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:18](#))

raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: resurrection, appoint, exalt)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- 2 Samuel 07:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 03:01
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:01
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 07:22
- Matthew 20:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.

- **41:05** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:07** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:05** " You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:04** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:12](#); [3:1](#))

receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:09
- 1 Thessalonians 01:06
- 1 Thessalonians 04:01
- Acts 08:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 09:05
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- **49:06** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:6](#); [3:24](#); [3:25](#); [4:10](#); [4:17](#))

reconcile, reconciled, reconciliation

Definition:

To “reconcile” and “reconciliation” refer to “make peace” between people who were formerly enemies of each other. “Reconciliation” is that act of making peace

- In the Bible, this term usually refer to Gods reconciling people to himself through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus Christ.
- Because of sin, all human beings are God’s enemies. But because of his compassionate love, God provided a way for people to be reconciled to him through Jesus.
- Through trusting in Jesus’ sacrifice as payment for their sin, people can be forgiven and have peace with God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “reconcile” could be translated as “make peace” or “restore good relations” or “cause to be friends.”
- The term “reconciliation” could be translated as “restoring good relations” or “making peace” or “causing peaceful relating.”

(See also: [peace](#), sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 05:19
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Matthew 05:24
- Proverbs 13:17-18
- Romans 05:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2398 , H3722 , G604 , G1259 , G2433 , G2643, G2644

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:20](#); [1:22](#))

redeem, redeemer, redemption

Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: [free](#), ransom)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:13-14
- Ephesians 01:7-8
- Ephesians 05:16
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Galatians 04:05
- Luke 02:38
- Ruth 02:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G59, G629, G1805, G3084, G3085

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:14](#); [4:5](#))

reveal, revealed, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: [good news](#), [good news](#), dream, vision)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 03:05
- Galatians 01:12
- Lamentations 02:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 03:15
- Revelation 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H241, H1540, H1541, G601, G602, G5537

(Go back to: [Colossians 1 General Notes](#); [1:26](#); [3:4](#); [Notes](#); [4:4](#))

right hand

Definition:

The figurative expression “right hand” refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated as, “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”

(See also: accuse, [evil](#), [honor](#), [mighty](#), punish, rebel)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:33
- Colossians 03:01
- Galatians 02:09
- Genesis 48:14
- Hebrews 10:12
- Lamentations 02:03
- Matthew 25:33
- Matthew 26:64
- Psalms 044:03
- Revelation 02:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3225, H3231, H3233, G1188

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:1](#))

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), integrity, just, law, law, [obey](#), pure, [righteous](#), [sin](#), unlawful)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

(Go back to: [Colossians 4:1](#))

rule, ruler, ruling, overrules

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: [authority](#), governor, king, synagogue)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:17-18
- Acts 07:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 03:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G746, G752, G755, G757, G758, G932, G936, G1018, G1203, G1299, G1778, G1785, G1849, G2232, G2233, G2525, G2583, G2888, G2961, G3545, G3841, G4165, G4173, G4291

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:16](#); [2:10](#); [2:15](#); [3:15](#))

Sabbath

Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: rest)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 02:06
- Leviticus 19:03
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 02:27
- Matthew 12:02
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:05** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:03** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4868, H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:16](#))

saint

Definition:

The term “saints” literally means “holy ones” and refers to believers in Jesus.

- Later in church history, a person known for his good works was given the title “saint,” but that was not how this term was used during New Testament times.
- Believers in Jesus are saints or holy ones, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “saints” could include “holy ones” or “holy people” or “holy believers in Jesus” or “set apart ones.”
- Be careful not to use a term that refers to people of only one Christian group.

(See also: [holy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:10
- 2 Corinthians 09:12-15
- Revelation 16:06
- Revelation 20:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H6918, H6922, G40

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:2](#); [1:4](#); [1:12](#); [1:26](#))

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is "sought." This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to "attempt" or "make an effort" to do something or to ask for something.

- To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
- To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
- To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
- To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
- To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
- To "seek favor" means to "urgently ask for favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2052, G2212

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:1](#))

send, sent, send out

Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean to “cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commis

(See also: appoint, [redeem](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 08:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 09:37-38
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G782, G375, G630, G649, G652, G657, G1026, G1032, G1544, G1599, G1821, G3333, G3343, G3936, G3992, G4311, G4341, G4369, G4842, G4882

(Go back to: [Colossians 4:8](#))

servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Definition:

The term "serve" generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a "servant:" a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a "servant" and a "slave" than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."

(See also: commit, enslave, household, [lord](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), covenant, law,)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8

- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257
- (Serve) H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:11](#); [3:22](#); [3:24](#); [4:1](#); [4:12](#))

sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: adultery, [false god](#), prostitute, [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:20
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 03:5-8
- Ephesians 05:03
- Genesis 38:24-26
- Hosea 04:13-14
- Matthew 05:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2181, H8457, G1608, G4202, G4203

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:5](#))

shadow, overshadow, shade

Definition:

The word “shadow” literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The “shadow of death” means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
- Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
- Sometimes “shadow” is used as another word for “darkness.”
- The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God’s wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate “shadow” in these contexts could include “shade” or “safety” or “protection.”
- It is best to translate “shadow” literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: [darkness](#), [light](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:09
- Genesis 19:08
- Isaiah 30:02
- Jeremiah 06:04
- Psalms 017:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2927, H6738, H6751, H6752, H6754, H6757, G644, G1982, G2683, G4639

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:17](#))

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23

- Romans 08:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:14](#); [Notes](#))

slander, slanders, slanderers, slanderous

Definition:

A slander consists of negative, defaming things spoken (not written) about another person. To say such things (not to write them) about someone is to slander that person. The person saying such things is a slanderer.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- To “slander” could be translated as to “speak against” or to “spread an evil report” or to “defame.”
- A slanderer is also called an “informer” or a “tale-bearer.”

(See also: blasphemy)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:13
- 1 Timothy 03:11
- 2 Corinthians 06:8-10
- Mark 07:20-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1848, H3960, H5791, H7270, H7400, H8267, G987, G988, G1228, G1426, G2636, G2637, G3059, G3060

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:8](#))

Son of God, the Son

Facts:

The term “Son of God” refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as “the Son.”

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God’s Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the term “Son of God,” it is best to translate “Son” with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate “son” fits with the word used to translate “father” and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin “Son” may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase “the Son” is a shortened form of “the Son of God,” especially when it occurs in the same context as “the Father.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [ancestor](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [son](#), [sons of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:10
- Acts 09:20
- Colossians 01:17
- Galatians 02:20
- Hebrews 04:14
- John 03:18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 02:18
- Romans 08:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God.**”
- **24:09** God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God.**”
- **31:08** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are **the Son of God.**”
- **37:05** Martha answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God.**”
- **42:10** So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the **Son of God!**”
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1121, H1247, G2316, G5207

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:13](#))

soul, self

Definition:

The term "soul" can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person's awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the "soul" can be spoken of as the part of a person that "relates to God."
- The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means "I am tired."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
- In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
- Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:08
- Acts 02:27-28
- Acts 02:41
- Genesis 49:06
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 01:21
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Jonah 02:7-8
- Luke 01:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 019:07
- Revelation 20:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G5590

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:23](#))

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings, which give nourishment to a person’s spirit, and “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: [angel](#), demon, [Holy Spirit](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:9](#); [2:5](#); [3:16](#))

strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
 - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
 - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
 - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
 - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
 - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
 - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
 - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
 - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
 - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
 - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
 - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), [persevere](#), [right hand](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G3756, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:11](#))

submit, submission, in submission

Definition:

To “submit” usually means to voluntarily place oneself under the authority of a person or government.

- The Bible tells believers in Jesus to submit to God and other authorities in their lives.
- The instruction to “submit to one another” means to humbly accept correction and to focus on the needs of others rather than on our own needs.
- To “live in submission to” means to put oneself under the authority of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The command “submit to” could be translated as “put yourself under the authority of” or “follow the leadership of” or “humbly honor and respect”
- The term “submission” could be translated as “obedience” or “the following of authority.”
- The phrase “live in submission to” could be translated as “be obedient to” or “put oneself under the authority of.”
- The phrase “be in submission” could be translated as “humbly accept authority.”

(See also: subject)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:34-36
- 1 Peter 03:01
- Hebrews 13:15-17
- Luke 10:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3584, G5226, G5293

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:18](#))

suffer, suffering

Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- Acts 07:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 06:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 022:24
- Revelation 01:09
- Romans 05:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:13** God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- **42:03** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:07** He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- **44:05** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- **46:04** God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H943, H1741, H1934, H4531, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4777, G4841, G5004

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:24](#))

teach, teaching, untaught

Definition:

To “teach” someone is to tell him something he doesn’t already know. It can also mean to “provide information” in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person’s “teaching” is or his “teachings” are what he has taught.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus’ disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God’s instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as, “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: [instruct](#), teacher, [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:03
- Acts 02:40-42
- John 07:14
- Luke 04:31
- Matthew 04:23
- Psalms 032:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H502, H2094, H2449, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, G1317, G1321, G1322, G2085, G2605, G2727, G3100, G2312, G2567, G3811, G4994

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:28](#); [2:7](#); [2:22](#); [3:16](#))

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, [judge](#), prophet, [testimony](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07

- John 03:33
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 01:09
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:19-20
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- 1 John 05:6-8
- 3 John 01:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:07** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

(Go back to: [Colossians 4:13](#))

throne, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), king, reign)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 01:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 05:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G968, G2362

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:16](#))

time, untimely, date

Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a “time” of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase “time, times, and half a time” the term “time” means “year.” This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
- “Time” can mean “occasion” in a phrase like “third time.” The phrase “many times” can mean “on many occasions.”
- To be “on time” means to arrive when expected, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” (See: [doublet](#))

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 01:07
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 08:29
- Psalms 068:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H116, H227, H310, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H3967, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6635, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7281, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H7992, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8462, H8543, G744, G530, G1074, G1208, G1441, G1597, G1626, G1909, G2034, G2119, G2121, G2235, G2250, G2540, G3461, G3568, G3764, G3819, G3956, G3999, G4178, G4181, G4183, G4218, G4287, G4340, G4455, G5119, G5151, G5305, G5550, G5551, G5610

(Go back to: [Colossians 4:5](#))

Timothy

Facts:

Timothy was a young man from Lystra. He later joined Paul on several missionary trips and helped shepherd new communities of believers.

- Timothy's father was a Greek, but both his grandmother Lois and his mother Eunice were Jews and believers in Christ.
- The elders and Paul formally appointed Timothy for the ministry by placing their hands on him and praying for him.
- Two books in the New Testament (1 Timothy and 2 Timothy) are letters written by Paul that provide guidance to Timothy as a young leader of local churches.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: appoint, believe, [church](#), [Greek](#), [minister](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:02
- 1 Timothy 01:02
- Acts 16:03
- Colossians 01:01
- Philemon 01:01
- Philippians 01:01
- Philippians 02:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5095

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:1](#))

to minister, ministry

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: [serve](#), sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 06:04
- Acts 21:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G1247, G1248, G1249, G2023, G2038, G2418, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3930, G5256, G5257, G5524

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:7](#); [1:23](#); [1:25](#); [4:7](#); [4:17](#))

tradition

Definition:

The term “tradition” refers to a custom or practice that has been kept over time and which is passed down to people in later generations.

- Often in the Bible the word “traditions” referred to teachings and practices that people made, not God’s laws. The expression “tradition of men” or “human tradition” makes this clear.
- Phrases such as “traditions of the elders” or “traditions of my fathers” referred specifically to Jewish customs and practices that Jewish leaders over time had added to the laws God gave to the Israelites through Moses. Even though these added traditions had not come from God, people thought they had to obey them in order to be righteous.
- The apostle Paul used the term “tradition” in a different way to refer to teachings about Christian practice that came from God and that he and other apostles had taught new believers.
- In modern times, there are many Christian traditions that are not taught in the Bible, but rather are the result of historically accepted customs and practices. These traditions should always be evaluated in light of what God teaches us in the Bible.

(See also: [apostle](#), believe, Christian, [ancestor](#), [generation](#), [Jew](#), law, Moses)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Colossians 02:08
- Galatians 01:13-14
- Mark 07:02
- Matthew 15:03

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G3862

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:8](#))

trespass

Definition:

The term “trespass” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. This term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a law or to violate the rights of another person.

- This term is very similar to the word “transgression,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against other people than against God.
- A trespass can be a violation of a moral law or a civil law.
- A trespass can also be a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms “sin” and “transgress,” especially as it relates to disobeying God. All sins are trespasses against God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “trespass against” could be translated as to “sin against” or to “break the rule.”
- Some languages may have an expression like “cross the line” that could be used to translate “trespass.”
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as “transgress” and “sin.”

(See also: disobey, iniquity, [sin](#), transgress)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 25:28
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- Colossians 02:13
- Ephesians 02:01
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Romans 05:17
- Romans 05:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H816, H817, H819, H2398, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G264, G3900

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:13](#))

tribulation, distresses, trouble

Definition:

The term “tribulation” refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

- It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus’ teachings.
- “The Great Tribulation” is a term used in the Bible to describe a period of time just before Jesus’ second coming when God’s wrath will be poured out on the earth for several years.
- The term “tribulation” could also be translated as “time of great suffering” or “deep distress” or “severe difficulties.”

(See also: [earth](#), [teach](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- Mark 04:17
- Mark 13:19
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Matthew 24:09
- Matthew 24:29
- Romans 02:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6869, G2347, G4423

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:24](#))

true, truth

Definition:

The term "truth" refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- "True" things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- "Truth" means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of "truth" includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
- Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
- The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
- The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
- To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."
- In an expression such as "worship God in spirit and in truth," the expression "in truth" could also be translated by "faithfully obeying what God has taught us."

(See also: believe, [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), prophet, [understand](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:08
- 3 John 01:08
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:06
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:18
- James 03:14
- James 05:19
- Jeremiah 04:02
- John 01:09
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20

- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die."
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *true* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *true* God.
- **31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:5](#); [1:6](#))

Tychicus

Facts:

Tychicus was one of Paul's fellow ministers of the gospel.

- Tychicus accompanied Paul on at least one of his missionary journeys to Asia.
- Paul described him as "beloved" and "faithful."
- Tychicus carried Paul's letters to Ephesus and Colosse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Asia, [beloved](#), [Colossae](#), Ephesus, [faithful](#), [good news](#), [minister](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:11-13
- Colossians 04:09
- Titus 03:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5190

(Go back to: [Colossians 4:7](#))

understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: believe, [know](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:47
- Luke 08:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 03:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1108, G1271, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2657, G3539, G3563, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:6](#); [1:9](#); [2:2](#))

vain, vanity

Definition:

The terms "vain" and "vanity" describe something that is useless or extremely temporary.

- In the Old Testament, idols are sometimes described as "vain" things that are worthless and cannot do anything.
- If something is done "in vain," it means that the effort or action did not accomplish what was intended. The phrase "in vain" might be translated in various ways, including: "without result;" "with no result;" "for no reason;" "for no purpose," or "with no purpose."
- Depending on the context, the term "vain" could be translated as "empty," "useless," "hopeless," "worthless," "meaningless," etc.

(See also: [false god](#), [worthy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 2 Peter 02:18
- Isaiah 45:19
- Jeremiah 02:29-31
- Matthew 15:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1891, H1892, H2600, H7307, H7385, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G945, G1500, G2756, G2758, G2761, G3151, G3152, G3153, G3155

(Go back to: [Colossians 2:8](#); [2:18](#))

walk, walked

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [honor](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:04
- Colossians 02:07
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 17:01
- Isaiah 02:05
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 04:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4198, G4748

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:10](#); [2:6](#); [3:7](#); [4:5](#))

watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1492, G2334, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5438

(Go back to: [Colossians 4:2](#))

will of God

Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- Colossians 04:12-14
- Ephesians 01:1-2
- John 05:30-32
- Mark 03:33-35
- Matthew 06:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309, G2596

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:1](#); [1:9](#); [4:12](#))

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#), [fruit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 06:03
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Exodus 31:06
- Genesis 03:06
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 07:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:05** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:01** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:09** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429, G5430

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:9](#); [1:28](#); [2:3](#); [2:23](#); [3:16](#); [4:5](#))

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: prophet, [true](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:01
- 1 Kings 13:01
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 08:11
- John 05:39
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 06:07
- Ephesians 01:13
- 2 Timothy 03:16

- James 01:18
- James 02:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:07** In **God's word** he commands his people, "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**."
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**."
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**."
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:25](#); [3:16](#); [4:3](#))

work, works, deeds

Definition:

The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term “works” refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term “work” in the Bible often refers to God's action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God's works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” could be “deeds” or “actions” or “things that are done.”
- God's “works” or “deeds” or the “work of his hands” could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “things that God does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “everything that God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as “service” or “ministry.”

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:07
- Romans 03:28
- Titus 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:10](#); [1:21](#); [3:17](#))

world, worldly

Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as, “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: [corrupt](#), [heaven](#), Rome, godly)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15
- 1 John 04:05
- 1 John 05:05
- John 01:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:6](#); [2:8](#); [2:20](#))

worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase to “have worth” could also be translated as to “be valuable” or to “be important.”
- The phrase “is worth more than” could be translated as “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See also: [honor](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:04
- 2 Thessalonians 01:11-12
- Acts 13:25
- Acts 25:25-27
- Acts 26:31
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Jeremiah 08:19
- Mark 01:07
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Philippians 01:25-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H639, H1929, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H6994, H7386, H7939, G96, G514, G515, G516, G2425, G2661, G2735

(Go back to: [Colossians 1:10](#))

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 03:07
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 01:18
- Romans 05:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G2372, G3709, G3949, G3950

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:6](#); [3:8](#))

wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

Definition:

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means to “cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as “do wrong to” or, “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:05
- Luke 06:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 071:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H816, H2248, H2250, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7667, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, G91, G92, G93, G95, G264, G824, G983, G984, G1536, G1626, G1651, G1727, G1908, G2556, G2558, G2559, G2607, G3076, G3077, G3762, G4122, G5195, G5196

(Go back to: [Colossians 3:25](#))

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentruber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wondra
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannah Sellers
Kara Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreich
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages

Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton
Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community